



August 8, 2014

Memorandum

To: Members of the Board

From: Melissa Loughan, Assistant Director

Wendy M. Payne

Through: Wendy M. Payne, Executive Director

Subj: **Reporting Entity--Tab C¹**

MEETING OBJECTIVES

- To approve the *Reporting Entity* ballot draft.

BRIEFING MATERIAL

The transmittal memorandum includes a short discussion, beginning on page 3 under Staff Analysis and Recommendations. A full list of Questions for the Board appears on the final page. In addition the following items are attached:

Attachment A: *Reporting Entity* Draft (with changes MARKED and explained.)

Attachment B: *Reporting Entity* Draft (CLEAN version with changes incorporated.)

Attachment C: *Reporting Entity* Ballot Form

Appendix 1: SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display* (with all amendments MARKED)

You may electronically access all of the briefing material at <http://www.fasab.gov/board-activities/meeting/briefing-materials/>

¹ The staff prepares Board meeting materials to facilitate discussion of issues at the Board meeting. This material is presented for discussion purposes only; it is not intended to reflect authoritative views of the FASAB or its staff. Official positions of the FASAB are determined only after extensive due process and deliberations.

BACKGROUND

After the June Board meeting, the Board reviewed the pre-ballot version of the *Reporting Entity*. Staff received little or no comments from the majority of Board members. Editorial revisions were received from three board members. In addition, one of those board members—Mr. Steinberg—submitted a dissent.

NEXT STEPS

As discussed at June meeting, the goal is to finalize and vote on the ballot draft at the August 2014 meeting. However, staff realizes this may be contingent upon member reactions to the dissent or staff proposed additions to clarify matters raised in the dissent. Therefore, staff requests members raise concerns in advance so staff may prepare revised documents for the Board's consideration before the meeting.

Staff notes Mr. Steinberg provided his dissent to staff shortly after the pre-ballot was distributed and considered staff input on his dissent language. Time did not permit us to provide Mr. Steinberg an opportunity to review the entire document again before distributing it to members. So, there may be additional revisions to the dissent from Mr. Steinberg after his review of the all materials. Likewise, staff believes fellow Board members would be appreciative of receiving those revisions in advance of the meeting, so the final dissent may be considered before the meeting and vote.

MEMBER FEEDBACK

If you require additional information or wish to suggest another alternative not considered in the staff proposal, please contact staff as soon as possible. In most cases, staff would be able to respond to your request for information and prepare to discuss your suggestions with the Board, as needed, in advance of the meeting. If you have any questions or comments prior to the meeting, please contact me by telephone at 202-512-5976 or by e-mail at loughanm@fasab.gov with a cc to paynew@fasab.gov.

STAFF ANALYSIS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

1. Proposed Changes

The proposed changes in the document are explained in the comment boxes. Therefore, staff did not believe providing a separate detailed analysis was necessary, but wanted to ask for feedback and questions on the changes.

Question: Do any members have comments or questions regarding any proposed change?

2. Dissent

As noted in the transmittal, Mr. Steinberg submitted a dissent. The language can be found in paragraphs A108 through A115. of the draft ballot.

Receiverships, conservatorships and intervention entities

The Board recognized that the federal government relationships and activities with other organizations have become complex thereby making it difficult to identify organizations for which elected officials are accountable. The Board determined the best approach was to establish principles for identifying the organizations to be included in the government-wide and component reporting entity GPFFRs. GPFFRs should include varied organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable regardless of their form to ensure users are provided with complete financial information.

Staff does not believe the standards define organizations that are part of the federal government entity as suggested by Mr. Steinberg. As the Statement explains, it provides² principles for determining which organizations should be included in the GPFFR.

Paragraphs 51-55 provide a discussion of disclosure entity types, including receiverships and conservatorships and organizations owned or controlled through federal government intervention actions to assist in identifying organizations that are disclosure entities. While such paragraphs acknowledge they generally would be disclosure entities, the paragraphs don't identify "receiverships, conservatorships and intervention entities as one of the parts of the reporting entity that are deemed disclosure entities."

Staff notes that a paragraph referred to in the dissent, paragraph A63, alerted staff that the main point of this paragraph is only made in the final sentence. Also, the AICPA

² See paragraphs 1, 2, and 7 in the Executive Summary and paragraphs 4, 7, 21, 22, 23, 37, 59, 60, 61, 63, 93, A1, A21, A23, A25, A27, A29, A30, A32, A39, A102, and A105.

uses the term “federal government entities” in ET 203 rather than “federal entities” (as in SAS 91 which was rescinded). The paragraph was clarified to provide for its intended purpose; to refer to entities that should use FASAB as the source for GAAP. The addition provides needed context for this and paragraph A63 now reads:

A further implication the Board wishes to avoid is that organizations owned or controlled as a result of interventions are considered “federal government entities” when applying professional standards established by the American Institute of CPAs. ^(FN) This Statement recognizes that such interventions create a need for accountability but they do not make the disclosure entities arising from intervention actions “federal government entities” or federal reporting entities. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

(FN) The American Institute of CPAs establishes ethics rules for its members through its Code of Professional Conduct. Rule 203, Accounting Principles, designates three bodies to establish accounting principles for three different domains—nongovernmental entities, state and local governmental entities, and “federal government entities.” (ET Section 203, paragraph .01)

Staff notes that certain respondents requested the notion of temporary be clarified during due process. As a result, the Board modified the proposed standards to explain that whether relationships are temporary or permanent should not be considered in determining whether an organization is included in the reporting entity. Instead, the standards explain that whether a relationship is temporary or permanent is likely to influence the form of reporting—that is, whether the entity is a consolidation or disclosure entity. During the review of Mr. Steinberg’s proposal staff suggested that certain language in his dissent be clarified to more accurately explain the reasons for modifications that were made but he declined.

Mr. Steinberg acknowledges he concurs that there should be disclosure of these types of entities and he agrees with the disclosure requirements. Therefore, the staff finds difficulty rebutting each point, especially when the end result would be the same—similar *disclosure of such organizations in the GPFFRs*.

Therefore, staff proposes language be added in the BFC to further clarify the deliberations on temporary and how it is considered when assessing organizations for inclusion in the GPFFRs. Staff proposes paragraphs A18-A20:

A18. One controversial matter addressed in this Statement was the inclusion of organizations where the ownership or control is intended to be temporary; such as receiverships, conservatorships, and entities owned or controlled due to intervention actions. The Board considered many options in developing the exposure draft and concluded that preparers and auditors would find it difficult to apply the notion of “temporary” absent clear guidance in the standards. In some circumstances, temporary relationships evolve into permanent relationships. Also, some federal government components are subject to sunset provisions and are also temporary. Because it was unlikely the

Board could anticipate the full range of circumstances preparers and auditors may face, the Board proposed in the exposure draft that the same principles be applied to all organizations.

A19. A few respondents asked the Board to provide that relationships intended to be temporary be excluded but most agreed with the proposal. Some respondents also asked that the Board explain how the temporary status of the relationship should be considered in applying the principles. The Board revised the proposal to explicitly state that whether relationships are temporary or permanent should not be considered in determining whether an organization is included in the GPFFR. Instead, the revised standards explain that whether a relationship is temporary or permanent is likely to influence whether the entity exhibits the characteristics established for a consolidation entity or for a disclosure entity. The standards also acknowledge that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities would generally be disclosure entities but that these assessments should be reviewed each fiscal year to determine if the classification should change.

A20. Members discussed the potential that inclusion of such entities in GPFFRs might lead users to conclude that entities receiving temporary federal government financial assistance have become part of the federal government. The summary alerts readers that the “principles herein are not intended to establish whether an organization is or should be considered a federal agency for legal or political purposes.” The Board recognizes that its responsibility is to ensure GPFFRs meet federal financial reporting objectives and that is the focus of this Statement. By avoiding subjective provisions such as “temporary” and instead establishing principles that can be applied to all relationships, this Statement supports meeting federal financial reporting objectives.

Question: Do members agree with staff proposed wording to the basis for conclusion paragraph A18- A20?

Organizations partially in the budget (museums and performing art organizations)

(Staff would like to note that certain editorial suggestions are marked and noted on Mr. Steinberg’s language. Time did not permit full consideration of those changes by Mr. Steinberg.)

One consistent view held by the Board has been that an organization that is included in the GPFFR should be included in its entirety and not be divided. The decision about “other funding” is considered in the assessment of whether it is a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity.

Previously it seemed the best approach was to remain silent in the standards and include explanatory language in the basis for conclusions to clarify that such entities would be fully consolidated – that is, with all funds included as well as provide an illustration for a consolidation entity museum provided further guidance to users. However, after further discussion the board revised two footnotes to provide further clarification on this issue within the standards portion of the document.

Given Mr. Steinberg's concern about placement, staff suggests moving the earlier footnote into the body of the standards to resolve the placement issue brought up in the dissent.

Staff proposes to move the language of footnote 12 to paragraph 15 in the body of the standards. Paragraph 15 would read:

15. This Statement first establishes the principles for identifying organizations to include in the government-wide GPFFR (see Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR beginning with paragraph 20) and then distinguishes between consolidation entities and disclosure entities (see Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation Entities or Disclosure Entities beginning with paragraph 38). In applying these principles and meeting the reporting requirements, "organization" refers to the organization in its entirety including all funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations). The term "organization" is used broadly and may include, among others, departments, agencies, bureaus, divisions, commissions, corporations, and components.

As noted, Mr. Steinberg agreed with the requirements established in this Statement for the museums, performing arts organizations, and other organizations funded partly by appropriations and partly by donations. Therefore by incorporating this change, staff hopes this resolves Mr. Steinberg's concern because the requirements are now stated within the body of the standards rather than in the footnote.

Question: Do members agree with staff proposed change—that is to delete footnote 12 and add the proposed wording to paragraph 15?

Question: Do members have any questions before voting on the ballot draft?

QUESTIONS FOR THE BOARD

- 1. Do any members have comments or questions regarding any proposed change?**
- 2. Do members agree with staff proposed wording to the basis for conclusion paragraph A18- A20?**
- 3. Do members agree with staff proposed change—that is to delete footnote 12 and add the proposed wording to paragraph 15?**
- 4. Question: Do members have any questions before voting on the ballot draft?**



Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

REPORTING ENTITY

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 47

November XX, 2014

THE FEDERAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS ADVISORY BOARD

The Secretary of the Treasury, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), and the Comptroller General, established the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB or "the Board") in October 1990. FASAB is responsible for promulgating accounting standards for the United States Government. These standards are recognized as generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for the federal government.

An accounting standard is typically formulated initially as a proposal after considering the financial and budgetary information needs of citizens (including the news media, state and local legislators, and analysts from private firms, academe, and elsewhere), Congress, federal executives, federal program managers, and other users of federal financial information. The proposed standards are published in an exposure draft for public comment. In some cases, a discussion memorandum, invitation to comment, or preliminary views document may be issued before an exposure draft is released on a specific topic. A public hearing is sometimes held to receive oral comments in addition to written comments. The Board considers comments and decides whether to adopt the proposed standard with or without modification. After review by the three officials who sponsor FASAB, the Board publishes adopted standards in a Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards. The Board follows a similar process for Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts, which guide the Board in developing accounting standards and formulating the framework for federal accounting and reporting.

Additional background information is available from the FASAB or its website:

- ["Memorandum of Understanding among the Government Accountability Office, the Department of the Treasury, and the Office of Management and Budget, on Federal Government Accounting Standards and a Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board."](#)
- ["Mission Statement: Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board", exposure drafts, Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards and Concepts, FASAB newsletters,](#) and other items of interest are posted on FASAB's website at: www.fasab.gov.

Copyright Information

This is a work of the U.S. government and is not subject to copyright protection in the United States. It may be reproduced and distributed in its entirety without further permission from FASAB. However, because this work may contain copyrighted images or other material, permission from the copyright holder may be necessary if you wish to reproduce this material separately.

Contact us:

Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board
441 G Street, NW, Suite 6814
Mail Stop 6H19
Washington, DC 20548
Telephone 202-512-7350
FAX 202-512-7366
www.fasab.gov

SUMMARY

This Statement establishes principles to ~~ensure-include~~ organizations for which elected officials are accountable ~~are included~~ in general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs). The principles guide financial reporting to recognize the complex diverse organizations possessing varying legal designations (for example, government agencies, not-for-profit organizations, corporations) that are used to address public policy challenges. The principles herein are not intended to establish whether an organization is or should be considered a federal agency for legal or political purposes. Rather, the principles guide preparers of financial statements at the government-wide and component reporting entity levels in determining what organizations should be included in the reporting entity's GPFFR for financial accountability purposes.

Comment [ML1]: Dacey suggestion

The government-wide GPFFR should include all organizations (1) budgeted for by elected officials of the federal government, (2) owned by the federal government, or (3) controlled by the federal government with risk of loss or expectation of benefits. In addition, this Statement establishes that an organization be included in the government-wide GPFFR if it would be misleading to exclude it even though it does not meet one of the three inclusion principles. When any of these conditions exists, information regarding the organization is necessary to provide accountability.

This Statement provides for determining the most appropriate means—consolidated financial statements or disclosures—to include information about these organizations in GPFFRs. Determining the most appropriate means requires an assessment of the degree to which the following characteristics are met: the organization is financed by taxes or other non-exchange revenue, is governed by the Congress and/or the President, imposes or may impose risks and rewards on the federal government, and/or provides goods and services on a non-market basis. Note, however, not all characteristics are required to be met to the same degree; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

Generally, consolidated financial statements presenting the financial position and results of operations are appropriate for those organizations that are to a large degree financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, governed by elected officials, imposing risks and rewards on the federal government, and providing goods and services on a non-market basis. Consolidated financial statements present the financial information as if the organizations were a single economic entity. Such a presentation is needed to show—in the aggregate—the net cost financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, the assets available for use, and the liabilities to be settled in the future. Organizations to be ~~included-consolidated~~ in the consolidated financial statements within the GPFFR are referred to as “consolidation entities.” Consolidation entities should apply Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*.

Comment [ML2]: Dacey suggestion

Some organizations that meet the principles for inclusion are to a large degree insulated from political influence and not intended to be funded ~~primarily~~ by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Presenting information about these discrete organizations in consolidated financial statements would obscure the operating results and financial position of the reporting entity. Instead, information about these types of discrete organizations should be disclosed in notes to

Comment [ML3]: Dacey suggestion

the consolidated financial statements of reporting entities applying federal financial accounting standards. The disclosures should reveal the nature of the relationship to the reporting entity, relevant activity during the reporting period, and the reporting entity's future exposures to risks and rewards resulting from the relationship. Organizations to be disclosed in the GPFFR are referred to as "disclosure entities." While the hierarchy of generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

This Statement establishes that each component reporting entity's GPFFR include all organizations for which it is accountable. This includes all consolidation entities and disclosure entities administratively assigned to it. The GPFFR for the government-wide reporting entity would be the consolidation of component reporting entity GPFFRs including information regarding disclosure entities.

In addition to the relationships that lead to organizations being included in the GPFFR based on the principles described above, the federal government may have significant relationships with other parties. This Statement requires disclosures if one party to an established relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party in making policy decisions, and the relationship is of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about it. The parties engaged in these relationships are "related parties." With respect to related parties, the disclosures would provide information about the nature of the government's relationship with the related party and other information to aid in understanding the relationship and its potential financial reporting impact, including exposures to risk of loss or potential gain as a result of the relationship.

Comment [ML4]: Phrase not necessary based on final RP

This Statement is effective for periods beginning after September 30, 2017. Earlier implementation is not permitted.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Summary	1
Introduction	4
Purpose	4
Materiality	5
Standards.....	6
Scope and Applicability	6
Definitions	6
Organizational Approach to Defining Boundaries	7
Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR	8
In the Budget	9
Majority Ownership Interest.....	9
Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit	10
Misleading to Exclude.....	12
Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation Entities or Disclosure Organizations	13
Consolidation entities	13
Disclosure organizations	14
Identifying Organizations Component Reporting Entities Are Accountable For.....	16
Scope of the Budget Process	17
Accountability Established Within a Component Reporting Entity	17
Misleading to Exclude and / or Misleading to Include	19
GPFFR Consolidation and Disclosure.....	20
Consolidation entities	20
Reporting on Disclosure organizations.....	21
Minimum Disclosures Regarding the Central Banking System	25
Related Parties.....	25
Effect on Existing Concepts—Proposed Amendments to SFFAC 2, <i>Entity and Display</i>.....	28
Effective Date	31
Appendix A: Basis for Conclusions	32
Appendix B: Flowchart.....	<u>5653</u>
Appendix C: Illustrations.....	<u>5754</u>
Appendix D: Abbreviations	<u>8885</u>
Appendix E: Task Force Members	<u>8986</u>
Appendix F: Glossary	<u>9087</u>

INTRODUCTION

PURPOSE

1. The federal government and its relationships with organizations have become increasingly complex. Notwithstanding these complexities, **general purpose federal financial reports**¹ (GPFFR) for the government-wide reporting entity should be broad enough to reflect the Congress and/or the President's accountability for those organizations. In addition, **component reporting entity** GPFFRs should allow the Congress and/or the President to hold management accountable. Although Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2, *Entity and Display*, addresses identifying **reporting entities** and criteria for including components in a reporting entity, questions have continued in this area indicating the need for standards.² Standards that can be used to identify organizations to include in the GPFFR of the government-wide reporting entity and each component reporting entity are important to meet federal financial reporting objectives.
2. This Statement guides preparers of GPFFRs in determining what organizations to report upon, whether such organizations are considered "consolidation entities" or "disclosure entities,"³ and what information should be presented. This guidance, together with existing guidance, will ensure that users of GPFFRs are provided with comprehensive financial information about federal reporting entities and their relationships so that federal financial reporting objectives⁴ are met. This Statement requires reporting entities to disclose certain information about disclosure entities administratively assigned to them. It does not require new **disclosures** regarding consolidation entities administratively assigned to reporting entities. Any existing required disclosures for the consolidated financial statements of the reporting entity, which include the consolidation entities, would continue to apply. While not specifying the inclusion or classification of the components of the central banking system, this Statement does establish certain minimum disclosures regarding the central banking system.
3. This Statement also guides preparers of GPFFRs in identifying **related parties** and in determining what information to provide about related party relationships of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information. There are disclosures

¹ Terms defined in the Glossary are shown in **bold-face** the first time they appear.

² Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2 is considered Other Accounting Literature. See Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP), Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*, for more information regarding the hierarchy.

³ "Consolidation entities" and "disclosure entities" are terms used to distinguish between entities based on the degrees to which the entity is (1) financed by taxes or other non-exchange revenue, (2) governed by the Congress and/ or the President, (3) imposing or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government and (4) providing goods and services on a market or non-market basis. See paragraphs 38 - 55 for more information.

⁴ Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 1, [*Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*](#).
[*Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*](#).

required regarding the nature of the relationship and financial-related exposures to risk of loss or potential gain resulting from relationships with such related parties.

4. The guidance recognizes that an organization's legal form may not reflect the substance of the relationship between the federal government and the organization. As such, the legal form or designation of an organization does not always determine whether it should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Even in cases where legislation indicates an organization is "not an agency or instrumentality" of the federal government, the organization should be assessed against the guidance contained in this Statement to determine whether it should be included in the reporting entity's GPFFR. Inclusion results from a need for accountability given the nature of the relationship between the federal government and the organization but inclusion does not change the legal form of the organization.

MATERIALITY

5. The provisions of this Statement need not be applied to immaterial items. The determination of whether an item is material depends on the degree to which omitting or misstating information about the item makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would have been changed or influenced by the omission or the misstatement.

STANDARDS

SCOPE AND APPLICABILITY

6. This Statement applies to federal reporting entities that prepare general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs) in conformance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) as defined by paragraphs 5 through 8 of Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board* (FASB). Paragraph 66 of this Statement also applies to federal reporting entities that prepare GPFFRs in conformance with GAAP as provided by paragraphs 9 through 12 of SFFAS 34.⁵
7. This Statement does not require any entity to prepare and issue GPFFRs. The purpose of this Statement is to enable federal reporting entities preparing and issuing GPFFRs to determine:
 - a. whether SFFAS 34 is applicable to an organization,
 - b. what organizations should be included in the GPFFR of federal reporting entities applying SFFAS 34,
 - c. the manner in which information should be presented for organizations included in the GPFFR, and
 - d. what disclosures, if any, are needed regarding related parties.

DEFINITIONS

8. **Reporting Entity**—Reporting entities are organizations that issue a GPFFR because either there is a statutory or administrative requirement to prepare a GPFFR or they choose to prepare one. The term “reporting entity” may refer to either the government-wide reporting entity or a component reporting entity (see definitions below).

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 2 provides criteria for an entity to be a reporting entity.⁶ The criteria focus on whether:

- a. An entity’s management is responsible for controlling and deploying resources, producing outputs and outcomes, and executing the budget or a portion thereof (assuming that the entity is included in the budget), and is held accountable for the entity’s performance.

Comment [ML5]: HS suggestion in footnote 6

⁵ SFFAS 34, [paragraph 4](#), footnote 4, indicates Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) GAAP would be the appropriate accounting standards for federal reporting entities within the executive, legislative, and judicial branches to adopt.

⁶ [Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts](#) (SFFAC) 2, paragraphs 29-38, provides a discussion [on titled](#) “Identifying the Reporting Entities for General Purpose Financial Reporting.”

- b. An entity's financial statements would provide a meaningful representation of operations and financial condition.
 - c. An entity's financial information could be used by interested parties to help them make resource allocation and other decisions and hold the entity accountable.
9. **Government-wide Reporting Entity—**The government-wide reporting entity's GPFFR includes all organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable based on principles established in this Statement.
10. **Component Reporting Entity—**"Component reporting entity" is used broadly to refer to a reporting entity within a larger reporting entity.⁷ Examples of component reporting entities include organizations such as executive departments, independent agencies, government corporations, legislative agencies, and federal courts. Component reporting entities would also include sub-components (those components included in the GPFFR of a larger component reporting entity) that may themselves prepare GPFFRs. One example is a bureau that is within a larger department that prepares its own standalone GPFFR.
11. **Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit—**"Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit" is the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations or to obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits.⁸ See paragraphs 26 - 35 for further discussion of control.
12. **Related Parties—**Organizations are considered to be related parties in the GPFFR if the existing relationship⁹ or one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions.

ORGANIZATIONAL APPROACH TO DEFINING BOUNDARIES

13. The federal government is unique because its constitutionally established powers, motivations, and functions are different from those of all other organizations. It is an extremely complex organization responsible for the common defense and general welfare of the nation. Although there are various perspectives¹⁰ for viewing the federal government, an organizational approach was established in SFFAC 2¹¹ as the most appropriate perspective for understanding the composition of the federal government. SFFAC 2 established that GPFFRs should include the aggregation of organizations¹² for which the federal government is financially accountable as well as other organizations for

⁷ The larger reporting entity could be the government-wide reporting entity or another component reporting entity.

⁸ For example, a non-financial benefit would be one in which the federal government benefits from a service being provided to it or on its behalf.

⁹ Relationship, as used in this context, refers to material transactions or events involving both parties.

¹⁰ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 13-28, discusses the organizational, budget and program perspectives of the federal government, as well as the intertwining of the perspectives.

¹¹ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-38.

¹² "Organization" refers to the organization in its entirety including all funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations). It is used broadly and may include, among others, departments, agencies, bureaus, divisions, commissions, corporations, and components.

which the nature and significance of their relationship with the government are such that their exclusion would cause the federal government's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete.

14. Accountability demands comprehensive reporting. To provide comprehensive reporting, the federal government must report on organizations that serve varied purposes and have complex governance structures and finances. In some cases, disclosing financial and other information in the notes about an organization rather than consolidating financial and other information about all organizations may better meet federal financial reporting objectives.
15. This Statement first establishes the principles for identifying organizations to include in the government-wide GPFFR (see Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR beginning with paragraph 20) and then distinguishes between consolidation entities and disclosure entities (see Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation Entities or Disclosure Entities beginning with paragraph 38). In applying these principles and meeting the reporting requirements, "organization" refers to the organization in its entirety including all funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations). The term "organization" is used broadly and may include, among others, departments, agencies, bureaus, divisions, commissions, corporations, and components.
16. This Statement also establishes that component reporting entities' GPFFRs must include all consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity and government-wide GPFFRs are complete (see Identifying Organizations for which Component Reporting Entities Are Accountable beginning with paragraph 56).
17. This Statement provides guidance for how to report on consolidation entities and disclosure entities (see GPFFR Consolidation and Disclosure beginning with paragraph 66).
18. This Statement establishes minimum disclosure requirements regarding the central banking system (see paragraph 79).
19. Lastly, this Statement provides for disclosure of related party relationships of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about them (see Related Parties beginning with paragraph 80).

Comment [GAO6]: Staff suggestion to move footnote 12 language here. Doing so may affect the dissent regarding this issue.

PRINCIPLES FOR INCLUSION IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR

20. This Statement provides three principles for determining which organizations should be included¹³ in the government-wide GPFFR and also requires inclusion of organizations if excluding them would be misleading (see paragraph 37). The three principles are to be applied without considering whether the relationship is temporary or permanent. However, whether the relationship is temporary or permanent would influence the likelihood that the entity exhibits, to a greater degree, the characteristics of a consolidation entity or of a disclosure entity.

Comment [ML7]: HS requested clarification regarding "to a greater degree" than "what." Staff's edit did not resolve his concern.

¹³ "Included" means the information is either consolidated or disclosed.

21. An organization meeting any one of the three principles below is included in the government-wide GPFFR:
- a. In the Budget
 - b. Majority Ownership Interest
 - c. Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit

IN THE BUDGET

22. An organization with an account or accounts listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information¹⁴ should be included in the government-wide GPFFR unless it is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.¹⁵ An organization listed in the budget is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance if it is:

- a. a state, local or territorial government, or component thereof, or
- b. a not-for-profit organization.

23. Notwithstanding the above provision regarding non-federal organizations listed in the budget, any entity meeting either of the next two principles (Majority Ownership Interest and Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit) should be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

MAJORITY OWNERSHIP INTEREST

24. The federal government (directly or through its components) may have an ownership interest¹⁶ in an organization. An ownership interest is a legal claim on the net residual assets of an organization such as holding shares or other formal equity instruments. The holding of an ownership interest usually but not always entitles the holder to an interest in voting rights.

¹⁴ The Budget presents information in various forms for different purposes. Only the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information should be used for determining whether information about an entity should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. In the fiscal year 2015 *Budget of the United States Government* (the Budget), the schedule was entitled “*Federal Budget by Agency and Account*.”

¹⁵ This Statement adopts the definition of “federal financial assistance” established in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996. However, an organization need not be subject to the requirements of the Single Audit Act in order to qualify as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. As defined by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, federal financial assistance is assistance that non-federal organizations receive or administer in the form of grants, loans, loan guarantees, property, cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, food commodities, direct appropriations, or other assistance. For the purposes of these standards, federally-authorized support fees and other charges would be considered “other assistance” even if legislation granting authority to collect them indicates that the fees or other charges are not considered public monies of the United States.

¹⁶ “Ownership interest” is the possession of substantially all of the benefits and risks incident to ownership. *FASAB Handbook as of June 30, 2014—Glossary*.

Comment [GAO8]: See edit to FN 15, removed quotes from other assistance. HS suggestion to avoid appearance of a new category being established.

25. Majority ownership interest exists with over 50 percent of the voting rights or net residual assets¹⁷ of an organization. When the federal government (directly or through its components) holds a majority ownership interest in an organization, it should be included as either a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity in the government-wide GPFFR.¹⁸

CONTROL WITH RISK OF LOSS OR EXPECTATION OF BENEFIT

26. An organization that is controlled by the federal government with risk of loss or expectation of benefit should be included as either a consolidation entity or disclosure entity in the government-wide GPFFR. For these purposes, control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is defined as follows:

Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations or obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits.¹⁹ Both the power and either the risk of loss or expectation of benefits aspects of the definition should be met to justify inclusion of an organization. Hereafter, control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is referred to as “control.”

27. Control refers to the ability to control, whether or not that ability is actively exercised, and should be assessed at the reporting date regardless of the federal government's ability to change it in the future. In determining whether control exists, it is necessary to determine the substance of the relationship between the federal government and the organization as it may not be completely reflected by the legal form of the relationship.
28. Control does not necessarily mean the federal government has responsibility for the management of the day-to-day operations of an organization. Rather, it is the federal government's authority to determine or influence the policies governing those activities that indicates control.
29. Determining whether control exists requires the application of professional judgment. The federal government achieves its objectives through a wide range of organizations which individually will fall on a continuum. At one end of the continuum, it is clear that an organization does not have the power to act independently and is controlled by the federal government—such as an executive department. At the other end, the organization has the power to act independently and, while the federal government may have a level of influence, it is clear that the federal government does not have control—such as a state or foreign government.

¹⁷ For example, the federal government may hold more equity in preferred stock than all other stockholders but the preferred stock may be non-voting.

¹⁸ Ownership interests 50% or less should be accounted for in accordance with the appropriate accounting standards per the GAAP hierarchy. However, the organization should still be assessed against the control inclusion principle and the misleading to exclude principle.

¹⁹ For example, a non-financial benefit would arise when the federal government receives a service or a service is provided to others on its behalf.

Indicators of Control

30. As discussed in the following paragraphs, there are indicators that should be considered in determining whether the federal government controls an organization. As noted above, consideration needs to be given to the nature of the relationship between the federal government and the organization and judgment applied to determine whether control exists.
31. Certain individual indicators provide persuasive evidence that control exists. Because each indicator provides strong evidence of control, meeting any one indicator would generally mean control is present. These indicators are when the federal government has the unilateral authority to:
- a. establish or amend the fundamental purpose and mission of the organization,²⁰ which may include authorizing the organization to exercise sovereign powers of the federal government and requiring the organization to carry out federal missions and objectives;
 - b. appoint or remove a majority of the governing board members;
 - c. direct the governing body regarding the establishment and subsequent revision of financial and operating policies of the organization; or
 - d. dissolve the organization thereby having access to the assets and responsibility for the obligations.
32. Other indicators provide evidence that control may exist, but must be considered in the aggregate and often require the application of professional judgment in assessing. These indicators are when the federal government has the ability to or is obligated to:
- a. provide significant input into the appointment of members of the governing body of the organization or being involved in the appointment or removal of a significant number of members;
 - b. direct the ongoing use of the organization's assets;
 - c. direct investment decisions including the liquidation of investments;
 - d. appoint or remove key executives or personnel;
 - e. approve the budgets or business plans for the organization;
 - f. require audits;
 - g. veto, overrule, or modify governing board decisions or otherwise significantly influence normal operations;

²⁰ Congressionally chartered not-for-profit organizations identified under United States Code (U.S.C.) Title 36, Subtitle II and III, should not be considered controlled solely because amendments to their federal charter must be enacted through legislation. Instead, consideration of control over such organizations should be based on paragraphs 31 and 32.

- h. finance the deficits of, provide financial support to, or settle liabilities of the organization;
- i. direct the organization to work with the government to provide services to taxpayers which may include determining the outcome or disposition of matters affecting the recipients of services;
- j. establish, rescind, or amend the organization's governance framework;
- k. establish limits or restrictions on borrowing and investments of the organization; or
- l. restrict the capacity to generate revenue of the organization, especially the sources of revenue.

Situations Where Control Does Not Exist

- 33. Because of the federal government's broad powers and economic influence, control should not be inferred from either:
 - a. authority to exercise regulatory powers over an organization; or
 - b. economic dependency of the organization on the federal government.
- 34. The federal government has the power to regulate many organizations by use of its sovereign and legislative powers. For example, the federal government has the power to regulate the behavior of organizations by imposing conditions or sanctions on their operations. However, the governing bodies of the regulated organizations make decisions within the regulatory framework. Regulatory powers do not constitute control for purposes of this Statement because the federal government's interest in these organizations extends only to the regulatory aspects of the operations.
- 35. Certain organizations may be economically dependent on the federal government but ultimately retain discretion as to whether to accept funding or do business with the federal government. For example, many not-for-profit organizations rely on federal government funding but that does not mean they are controlled by the federal government. Although the federal government may be able to influence organizations dependent on federal funding or business through purchasing power, the federal government typically does not govern their financial and operating policies.

MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE

- 36. There may be instances when an organization does not meet the inclusion principles in paragraphs 22 through 35 yet the government-wide GPFFR would be misleading or incomplete if the organization were excluded.²¹
- 37. Organizations should be included in the government-wide GPFFR if it would be misleading to exclude them.

²¹ Although such situations would be rare, this Statement provides for situations that may arise.

REPORTING ON ORGANIZATIONS—CONSOLIDATION ENTITIES OR DISCLOSURE ENTITIES

38. The principles above should be used to assess what organizations to include in the GPFFR. Next, a distinction should be made between “consolidation entities” and “disclosure entities” as that distinction determines how the organizations will be reported. This distinction, which should be consistent at the government-wide and component reporting entity levels, is based on an assessment of the degree to which the following characteristics are met: the organization is financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, is governed by the Congress and/or the President, imposes or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government, and/or provides goods and services on a non-market basis.²² Note, however, not all characteristics are required to be met or to be met to the same degree; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

CONSOLIDATION ENTITIES

39. The organizations that should be consolidated in the financial statements in the GPFFR are referred to as “consolidation entities.” Generally, an organization is considered a consolidation entity if, based on an assessment²³ of the following characteristics as a whole, the organization is:
- a. is financed through taxes and other non-exchange revenues.
 - b. is governed by the Congress and/or the President.
 - c. imposesing or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government.
 - d. providesing goods and services on a non-market basis.
40. While greater judgment will be needed to classify other organizations, organizations listed in the budget, except for non-federal organizations receiving federal assistance (see paragraph 22), generally would qualify as consolidation entities.
41. For consolidation entities, the governance structure is vertically integrated, such that the chain of command and manner of decision-making leads directly to elected officials. Vertical integration may include the establishment of organizational authorities, development and/or approval of budgets, and the appointment of organizational leaders by elected officials.
42. Entities for which the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent, such as receiverships, conservatorships, and other intervention actions, would be less likely to meet these characteristics as a whole. Such entities generally would not be classified as consolidation entities.

²² Goods and services are provided on a non-market basis when they are provided free of charge or at charges that bear little relationship to the cost of providing such goods or services.

²³ As discussed in paragraph 38, not all characteristics are required to be met or to be met to the same degree; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

Comment [ML9]: Bell suggestion

DISCLOSURE ENTITIES

43. The federal government has relationships with organizations afforded a greater degree of autonomy than consolidation entities. Some organizations may exercise powers that are reserved to the federal government as sovereign. Other organizations may not themselves carry out missions of the federal government but, instead, are owned or controlled by the federal government as a result of (a) regulatory actions (such as organizations in **receivership or conservatorship**) or (b) other federal government intervention actions. Under such regulatory or other intervention actions, the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent and such entities generally would be classified as disclosure entities when considering the characteristics taken as a whole. To avoid obscuring information about these more autonomous organizations while still providing accountability, such organizations are to be disclosed rather than consolidated in GPFFRs. Hereafter, these organizations are referred to as “disclosure entities.”
44. Disclosure entities may maintain a separate legal identity, have a governance structure that vests most decision-making authorities in a governing body to insulate the organization from political influence, and/or have relative financial independence.
45. Disclosure entities may receive limited or no funding from general tax revenues. The Congress and/or the President have less direct involvement in decision-making (governance) than in consolidation entities. Limited risks and rewards fall to the federal government. Disclosure entities may provide the same or similar goods and services that consolidation entities do, but are more likely to provide them on a market basis.²⁴
46. Disclosure entities may include but are not limited to: quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities, organizations in receiverships and conservatorships, and organizations owned or controlled through federal government intervention actions. As noted above, in some cases, the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent. The following disclosure entity types, while not inclusive of all the types, are presented to assist in identifying organizations that are disclosure entities. The accompanying Appendix C—Illustrations offers non-authoritative hypothetical examples that may be useful in understanding the application of the standards.

Quasi-Governmental and/or Financially Independent Entities

47. Quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities have relationships with the federal government that are not temporary. Such relationships may be considered long-term, or even permanent in some cases, when compared to other types of disclosure entities or even permanent in some cases. Quasi-governmental and financially independent entities have different governance and financial arrangements. Their and classification takes into consideration considers such factors as:

- a. whether the governance of the entity is through officials appointed for terms aligning with the appointing official versus longer-term appointments or other governance structures intended to insulate the entity from political influence;

Comment [ML10]: Bell suggestion

Comment [ML11]: Dacey suggestion

²⁴ Goods and services are provided on a market basis when prices are based on the prices charged in a competitive marketplace between willing buyers and sellers.

- b. whether the entity is financed primarily through taxes and other non-exchange revenues versus limited or no such financing; and
 - c. whether the entity provides goods and services on a non-market basis versus provides goods and services on a market basis.
48. Governance differences typically lead to greater independence. Characteristics may include the following:
- a. Longer appointments of key executives or governing boards to allow these appointees a degree of independence from the Congress and/or the President
 - b. Delegated operational authority to provide a service or execute a program in a manner similar to private business enterprises
 - c. Private sector legal characteristics, such as not-for-profit status under the Internal Revenue Code
 - d. Exemption by statute from laws or regulations dealing with the federal budget, funds, personnel, ethics, acquisition, property, or works
 - e. Voluntary association with the federal government and shared purposes to implement government policies
49. Financial differences typically lead to greater fiscal autonomy. Characteristics may include the following:
- a. Primarily funded from a source other than appropriations
 - b. Delegated financial authority to provide a service or execute a program in a manner similar to private business enterprises
 - c. Principally engaged in selling goods and/or services to organizations outside of the federal government
 - d. Intended, in the normal course of its operations, to maintain its operations and meet its liabilities from revenues received from sources outside of the federal government
50. Not all entities of a given type will meet the factors above. These factors are provided to assist in identifying entities that are quasi-governmental and/or financially independent. Examples of the types of entities that could be considered quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities are **Federally Funded Research and Development Centers**, museums, performing arts organizations, universities, and venture capital funds. Each entity should be assessed objectively since there are likely to be differences among the entities within these example types such that some should be classified as consolidation entities and others as disclosure entities.

Receiverships and Conservatorships

51. The federal government may take control or ownership of failed financial institutions, such as banks, with no goal to maintain control or ownership. Receiverships or conservatorships are established to liquidate failing financial institutions or to guide such institutions back to safe and sound conditions.²⁵ Entities controlled or owned through receiverships or conservatorships are generally disclosure entities.

Federal Government Intervention Actions Resulting in Control or Ownership

52. In exceptional circumstances such as economic instability or a national security crisis, the federal government may intervene in organizations not previously meeting the inclusion principles. Interventions arise because of the federal government's broad responsibility for the well-being of the country. Some, but not all, interventions establish ownership or control such that the organization then meets the inclusion principles. Although intervention actions are not expected to be permanent, they may not be subject to a defined time limit.
53. Typically federal government intervention actions are not routine activities. Strategic planning documents are unlikely to include objectives to routinely initiate such interventions or to permanently operate organizations acquired through interventions.
54. Examples of intervention actions resulting in control or ownership include:
- a. The federal government provides financial support and, in doing so, obtains control of an established organization but expects to relinquish or cede control.
 - b. The federal government acquires an ownership interest in an organization but expects to end its interest as soon as practicable.
55. The relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent and such entities generally would be classified as disclosure entities when considering the characteristics taken as whole. Nonetheless, entities controlled or owned as a result of intervention actions at the fiscal year-end must be assessed to confirm the classification.

Comment [ML12]: Dacey suggestion

IDENTIFYING ORGANIZATIONS FOR WHICH COMPONENT REPORTING ENTITIES ARE ACCOUNTABLE

56. The government-wide reporting entity is the only federal reporting entity that is an independent economic entity²⁶ and the inclusion principles are expressed from the perspective of the federal government. However, GPFFRs for the government-wide reporting entity represent a consolidation of component reporting entity GPFFRs. Therefore, component reporting entities must identify and include in their GPFFRs all

²⁵ For example, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) is an independent agency created by the Congress with the mission "to maintain stability and public confidence in the nation's financial system by: insuring deposits; examining and supervising financial institutions for safety and soundness and consumer protection; and, managing receiverships."

²⁶ SFFAC 2, paragraph 38.

consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity GPFFRs and government-wide GPFFR are complete.

57. A component reporting entity's GPFFR should include all organizations that would allow the ~~Congress and/or the President~~ users to hold the component reporting entity's management (such as appointed officials or other agency heads) accountable for implementation of public policy decisions. Inclusion would also reveal the risks inherent in component reporting entity operations, and thereby enhance accountability to the public. Each component reporting entity is accountable for all consolidation entities²⁷ and disclosure entities administratively assigned to it.
58. Administrative assignments to component reporting entities are typically made in laws and policy documents such as statutes, budget documents, regulations, or strategic plans. Administrative assignments can be identified by evaluating:²⁸
 - a. Scope of the Budget Process
 - b. Accountability Established Within a Component Reporting Entity
 - c. Misleading to Exclude and/or Misleading to Include

Comment [GAO13]: Edits to this paragraph based on comments from HS

SCOPE OF THE BUDGET PROCESS

59. Consolidation entities and disclosure entities subject to the budget approval and oversight process of the component reporting entity head should be included in the component reporting entity GPFFR. Each component reporting entity should include:
 - a. all consolidation entities listed within its section of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives--Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information,²⁹ and
 - b. all disclosure entities included within its congressional budget justification.³⁰

ACCOUNTABILITY ESTABLISHED WITHIN A COMPONENT REPORTING ENTITY

²⁷ A consolidation entity comprises all consolidation entities administratively assigned to it and should present information about disclosure entities assigned to it.

²⁸ Component reporting entities should develop processes to ensure they identify and assess any organizations (1) within the scope of their budget process, (2) for which accountability is established within their component reporting entity, or (3) which are misleading to exclude. It is anticipated that central agencies will determine if there is a need for coordinated guidance to ensure government-wide consistency.

²⁹ The Budget presents information in various forms for different purposes. Only the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information should be used for determining whether information about an entity should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. In the fiscal year 2015 *Budget of the United States Government* (the Budget), the schedule was entitled "Federal Budget by Agency and Account."

³⁰ A congressional budget justification is a document submitted annually to Congress to justify an organization's budget request.

60. Consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which a component reporting entity has been assigned accountability responsibilities should be included in the GPFFR of that entity. Determining whether accountability was established or assigned to a component reporting entity requires the consideration of certain indicators and the application of professional judgment. Indicators³¹ that accountability has been established in the component reporting entity include:
- a. Statutes or regulations establishing an organization state that it is assigned to or part of a larger federal organization.
 - b. An organization is included in the component reporting entity's published organization chart.
 - c. The component reporting entity acquires and/or monitors³² ownership interests in organizations where there are ongoing responsibilities³³ such as:
 - i. coordinating and/or conveying input on strategic plans,
 - ii. providing appropriated funds to the organization and receiving requests for funding in the current and/or future years,
 - iii. administering any federal grants or contracts awarded to the organization,
 - iv. monitoring activities and/or reporting on outcomes, or
 - v. monitoring the value of the ownership interest.
 - d. A controlled organization³⁴ was established by statute or by action of the component reporting entity to support the mission of the component reporting entity, and a continuing relationship exists. Examples of continuing relationships include those in which the component reporting entity:
 - i. approves bylaws including any amendments;
 - ii. is represented on the governing board (for example, as an ex-officio member);
 - iii. appoints members of the governing board;
 - iv. coordinates and/or conveys input on strategic plans;
 - v. monitors organizational performance;
 - vi. approves budgets, operating plans, or contracts with others;

³¹These indicators provide evidence that accountability was established or assigned to a component reporting entity. Meeting any one would typically mean accountability was established.

³²Such responsibilities may be assigned to a program office.

³³These responsibilities are examples of actions or activities performed by the component reporting entity that are indicative of monitoring an ownership interest in an organization, which is an indicator of accountability.

³⁴Where control exists at the government-wide level based on paragraphs 26-35.

- vii. establishes and executes cooperative agreements with the organization;
- viii. administers federal grants to or contracts with the organization;
- ix. testifies before Congress regarding organization performance and objectives;
or
- x. has significant financial transactions or balances that indicate ongoing managerial involvement.

61. If more than one component reporting entity is assigned responsibilities as described above, the following guidance applies:

- a. Disclosure entities should be included in the GPFFR of each component reporting entity assigned such responsibilities.
- b. Consolidation entities should be administratively assigned to only one component reporting entity.³⁵ The component reporting entity assigned the largest share³⁶ of responsibilities described in paragraph 60 generally should include the consolidation entity.

62. If a disclosure entity has not been administratively assigned to a consolidation entity, the disclosure entity should be reported by a component reporting entity (a) assigned responsibility for transferring funds to or receiving funds from the disclosure entity or (b) with which its mission most closely aligns.

MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE AND / OR MISLEADING TO INCLUDE

- 63. There may be instances where an organization is not administratively assigned to the component reporting entity based on the principles in paragraphs 59-62 yet the component reporting entity GPFFR would be misleading or incomplete if the organization were excluded. If so, such organizations should be included in the component reporting entity's GPFFR.³⁷
- 64. There may be instances where the principles in paragraphs 59-62 are met in form but not substance so that consolidation at the component reporting entity level would result in misleading presentation for the component reporting entity. While such conditions are expected to be rare, if it would be misleading to consolidate the organization in the component reporting entity GPFFR, the organization may be excluded so long as it is consolidated in another component reporting entity or directly in the government-wide reporting entity.
- 65. Determining whether it would be misleading to include a consolidation entity administratively assigned to a component reporting entity requires the application of

³⁵ Note that the component reporting entity to which a consolidation entity is administratively assigned may also be administratively assigned to a higher-level component reporting entity.

³⁶ Largest share as used here is based on the most significant administrative role.

³⁷ Although such situations would be rare, this Statement provides for situations that may arise.

professional judgment. Examples³⁸ of indicators that it may be misleading to include an organization are:

- a. The budget submission is combined prior to submission but is not jointly developed or executed, as indicated by:
 - i. the budget request not being directly approved by component reporting entity management, or
 - ii. the absence of significant involvement by component reporting entity management regarding budget execution, investments, or strategic planning.
- b. The component reporting entity provides little or no direct oversight of the organization.
- c. The organization's funding is separate from the component reporting entity's funding.
- d. The consolidated cost information would be misleading.
- e. The organization operates itself as a stand-alone organization (either since its inception or for a long history) has routinely prepared annual audited financial statements and has submitted financial data directly to the Department of the Treasury for the government-wide GPFFR.

GPFFR CONSOLIDATION AND DISCLOSURE

CONSOLIDATION ENTITIES

66. Consolidation entities' financial statements should be consolidated for the government as a whole to facilitate an assessment of the financial position³⁹ of the federal government and the cost of operations financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Component reporting entities should consolidate the financial information for all consolidation entities administratively assigned to them. Consolidation⁴⁰ aggregates the individual financial amounts of organizations that constitute a reporting entity and results in presentation of information for a single economic entity representing taxpayer-supported activities, resources, and obligations.

³⁸ The indicators listed in paragraph 65 a. – e. are examples and there may be other indicators not included on this list. Further, no specific number of indicators need be present to determine an organization would be misleading to include. This determination is based on the assessment as a whole after considering all facts and often requires professional judgment in making such decisions.

³⁹ The consolidated financial statements should include amounts and balances, consistent with applicable accounting standards, even if the amounts and balances arise from or are supported by different funding sources (for example, but not limited to appropriations or donations).

⁴⁰ Consolidation is a method of accounting that combines the accounts of those entities line by line on a uniform basis of accounting and eliminates balances and transactions among the entities. For selected financial statements such as the statement of budgetary resources, a combined financial statement which does not eliminate balances and transactions among the entities is acceptable.

67. Consolidation entities as defined herein are considered federal reporting entities and should apply GAAP as defined in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*. This Statement does not establish new disclosure requirements regarding consolidation entities but acknowledges existing standards require disclosures.
68. SFFAS 34 recognizes that some federal reporting entities prepare and publish financial reports pursuant to the accounting and reporting standards issued by the FASB. SFFAS 34 provides that GPFFRs prepared in conformity with accounting standards issued by the FASB also may be regarded as in conformity with GAAP. Consolidation entities (~~i.e. that is,~~ the consolidated government-wide reporting entity or a consolidated component reporting entity) may consolidate component ~~reporting entity~~ or sub-component ~~reporting entity~~ financial statements ~~for consolidation entities~~ prepared in accordance with SFFAS 34 without conversion for any differences in accounting policies among the organizations.

Comment [GAO14]: Staff edit after HS comment

REPORTING ON DISCLOSURE ENTITIES

69. Maintaining a distinction between the finances of consolidation entities and disclosure entities will more effectively meet federal financial reporting objectives. Such a distinction allows for separate presentation of financial information for organizations where there is a difference in purpose, governance structure, and financial relationships. Disclosing financial and other information in the notes about disclosure entities rather than consolidating financial and other information about all organizations included in a GPFFR may better meet federal financial reporting objectives. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.
70. For those organizations classified as disclosure entities, the preparer should exercise judgment in determining the appropriate disclosures based on the factors and principles provided herein. Information regarding disclosure entities should be disclosed in accordance with Disclosure Requirements as detailed in paragraphs 72 to 75 below after considering the factors listed in paragraph 71.

Factors in Determining Disclosures

71. Materiality is an overarching consideration in financial reporting. Preparers should consider both qualitative and quantitative materiality in determining the information that should be presented regarding disclosure entities. Beyond materiality, the following factors⁴¹ should be considered in making judgments about the extent of appropriate disclosures:
- Relevance to reporting objectives**—Significance of the disclosure entity's information to meeting the reporting objectives established in SFFAC 1, *Objectives of*

⁴¹ The factors are presented in a list for consideration in the aggregate; no individual weights should be assigned or interpreted.

Federal Financial Reporting, with regard to the reporting entity. In particular, this would include the significance of the information regarding results of operations and financial position to meeting the operating performance and stewardship reporting objectives.

- b. **Nature and magnitude of the potential risks/exposures or benefits associated with the relationship**—Information is needed to provide an understanding of the potential operational or financial impact, including financial-related exposures to risk of loss and potential gain, to the consolidation entity resulting from the disclosure entity's operations.
- c. **Complexity of the relationship**—More complex relationships would involve additional detailed disclosures to ensure the relationship is understood by the readers.
- d. **Extent to which the information interests, or may be expected to interest, a wide audience**—There may be a wide interest in the information due to the sensitivity of the relationship, materiality of the transactions, media attention, or other reasons. Interested parties may expect more extensive information regarding the disclosure entity or its relationship with the federal government.
- e. **Extent to which there are no alternative sources of reliable information**—An objective of GPFFRs is to meet the needs of users who may have limited access to information or statements and lack the ability to demand the desired information.

Comment [ML15]: HS suggestion

Disclosure Requirements

- 72. In addition to the factors presented in paragraph 71 regarding the extent of disclosures, other qualitative and quantitative factors should be considered in determining whether information regarding a disclosure entity should be presented separately due to its significance or aggregated with the information regarding other disclosure entities. If information is aggregated, aggregation may be based on disclosure entity type, class, investment type, or a particular event deemed significant to the reporting entity.
- 73. Disclosures should be integrated so that concise, meaningful, and transparent information is provided. Integration is accomplished by providing a single comprehensive note regarding the disclosure entity or entities and related balances, or by incorporating references to relevant notes elsewhere in the GPFFR but relating to the disclosure entity or entities. For example, a reference may be made to a note regarding investments in the disclosure entity.
- 74. For each significant disclosure entity and aggregation of disclosure entities, information should be disclosed to meet the following objectives:⁴²
 - a. **Relationship and Organization**: The nature of the federal government's relationship with the disclosure entity or entities.

Comment [GAO16]: Staff edit based on HS suggestion

⁴² The objectives are not listed in any order of preference.

- b. **Relevant Activity:** Nature and magnitude of relevant activity during the period and balances at the end of the period.
- c. **Future exposures:** A description of financial and non-financial risks, potential benefits and, if possible, the amount of the federal government's exposure to gains and losses from the past or future operations of the disclosure entity or entities.

Comment [GAO17]: Consistency

75. Examples of information that may meet the above objectives and provide the necessary understanding of the disclosure entity's relationship and organization, relevant activities, and future exposures specific to the federal government are provided below. The examples are provided to assist in determining the types of information that would meet the objectives in paragraph 74. No individual example is itself a required disclosure and the examples are not required in the aggregate. The examples are listed individually and should not be considered alternatives or substitutes for one another. The list of examples below is not exhaustive and additional items of information necessary to meet the objectives should be disclosed even if not specifically identified in the list below. Disclosures that meet the objectives in paragraph 74 should be provided. In determining what information is needed to meet the objectives in paragraph 74, the factors in paragraph 71, including the complexity, nature, and magnitude of the relationship, should be considered.

- a. The name and description of the disclosure entity,⁴³ including information about how its mission relates to federal policy objectives, actions taken on behalf of the federal government, its organization, and any significant involvements with outside parties.
- b. The nature of the relationship between the federal government and the disclosure entity including relevant information regarding:
 - i. How any control or influence over the disclosure entity is exercised;
 - ii. Key terms of contractual agreements, statutes, or other legal authorities; and
 - iii. The percentage of ownership interest and/or voting rights.
- c. For intervention actions, the primary reasons for the intervention and a brief description of the federal government's plan relative to monitoring, operating and/or disposing of the disclosure entity and/or a statement that the intervention is not expected to be permanent.
- d. A description and summary of assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, gains, and losses recognized in the financial statements of the reporting entity as a consequence of transactions with or interests in the disclosure entity and the basis for determining the amounts reported (or a reference to other disclosures where such information is provided).
- e. A discussion of the disclosure entity's key financial indicators and changes in key financial indicators.

⁴³ For simplicity, information is described in relation to a single disclosure entity. Nonetheless, the information may be presented for an aggregation of disclosure entities.

- f. Information regarding the availability of the disclosure entity's annual financial report and how it can be obtained.
 - g. In the event that contractual agreements, statutes, or other legal authorities obligate the reporting entity to provide financial support to the disclosure entity in the future, information regarding potential financial impacts (including those terms of the arrangements to provide financial support and liquidity, including events or circumstances that could expose the federal government to a loss).
 - h. The nature of, and changes in, the risks and benefits associated with the control of, or other involvement with, the organization during the period.
 - i. The amount that best represents the federal government's maximum exposure to gain or loss from its involvement with the disclosure entity, including how the maximum exposure to gain or loss is determined. (If this cannot be quantified, a narrative discussion could be offered.)
 - j. Other information that would provide an understanding of the potential financial impact, including financial-related exposures to risk of loss or potential gain to the reporting entity, resulting from the disclosure entity's operations including important existing, currently-known demands, risks, uncertainties, events, conditions, and trends—both favorable and unfavorable.
76. Any disclosure entity's financial information presented in the reporting entity's GPFFR should be based on accrual-basis standards provided in GAAP or an other comprehensive basis of accounting developed for its specific type of entity.⁴⁴ This includes GAAP for the relevant domain (FASAB, Governmental Accounting Standards Board, or FASB).
77. When information is derived from the disclosure entity's financial report, it is preferable but not mandatory that the report be for the same reporting period as the government-wide reporting entity. If a disclosure entity's reporting period differs from the government-wide reporting entity's and it is not cost-beneficial to align the reporting periods, any financial information disclosed from the disclosure entity's financial report should be for a reporting period ending within the government-wide reporting entity's reporting period.
78. Significant changes in information occurring from the end of the disclosure entity's reporting period should be reported consistent with the requirements of SFFAS 39, *Subsequent Events: Codification of Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards Contained in the American Institute of CPAs Statements on Auditing Standards*.

⁴⁴ Consolidation entities should apply the GAAP hierarchy established in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*.

MINIMUM DISCLOSURES REGARDING THE CENTRAL BANKING SYSTEM⁴⁵

79. The following information regarding the central banking system should be disclosed⁴⁶ in the government-wide GPFFR:
- a. Description of the central bank, including information about how its mission relates to federal policy objectives, actions taken on behalf of the federal government, its organization, and any significant involvements with outside parties.
 - b. The nature of the relationship between the federal government and the central bank including relevant information regarding governance structure with particular emphasis on matters affecting its independence and insulation from political influence.
 - c. A discussion of the significance and magnitude of financial actions reported during the year by the central banking system to achieve monetary and fiscal policy objectives.
 - d. A description and summary of assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, gains, and losses recognized in the financial statements of the reporting entity as a consequence of transactions with or interests in the central bank and the basis for determining the amounts reported (or a reference to other disclosures where such information is provided).
 - e. The amount that best represents the federal government's maximum exposure to gain or loss from its involvement with the central bank, including how the maximum exposure to gain or loss is determined (If this cannot be quantified, a narrative discussion could be offered.).
 - f. Information regarding the availability of the central bank's annual financial report and how it can be obtained.

RELATED PARTIES

80. In addition to organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable,⁴⁷ the federal government may have relationships with other parties. Only relationships of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about

⁴⁵ Central banking system functions are currently carried out by the Federal Reserve System (FRS). The FRS comprises the Board of Governors, the Federal Open Market Committee, the regional Federal Reserve Banks, and the Bureau of Consumer Financial Protection. The Bureau was established in 2010 as an independent bureau within the FRS pursuant to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act. The law provides that the Bureau's financial statements should not be consolidated with the financial statements of either the Board of Governors or the Federal Reserve System.

⁴⁶ Depending on the circumstances, some of the listed information may be disclosed due to other requirements. The resulting disclosures should be integrated so that concise, meaningful and transparent information is provided and information is not repetitive.

⁴⁷ Entities for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable are in the budget, majority owned, or controlled and would meet the inclusion principles and be reported as either a consolidation entity or disclosure entity and not be subject to related party reporting.

such relationships warrant disclosure.⁴⁸ Guidance is provided below but judgment will also be required to identify relationships that warrant disclosure as related parties.

81. Related parties: Organizations are considered to be related parties in the GPFFR if the existing relationship⁴⁹ or one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions.
82. Significant influence (for the purpose of this Statement) is the power to participate in the policy decisions of an entity, but not control those policies. Significant influence may be exercised in several ways, sometimes by representation on the board of directors or equivalent governing body but also by, for example, participation in the policy-making process, interchange of managerial personnel, or dependence on technical information. Significant influence may be gained by a minority ownership interest, statute, or agreement.
83. Significant influence does not arise from regulatory actions or economic dependency alone. However, regulation or economic dependency, together with other factors, may give rise to significant influence and therefore a related party relationship. Judgment is required in assessing the impact of regulation and economic dependence on a relationship.
84. Although component reporting entities of the federal government may significantly influence each other, component reporting entities are subject to the overall control of the federal government and operate together to achieve the policies of the federal government and are not considered related parties. Therefore, component reporting entities need not be disclosed as related parties by other component reporting entities.
85. Related parties *generally* would include (see paragraph 86 for organizations *generally* not included) but are not limited to:
 - a. **Government sponsored enterprises** not meeting the inclusion principles
 - b. Organizations governed by representatives from each of the governments that created the organization, including the United States, wherein the federal government has agreed to ongoing or contingent financial support to accomplish shared objectives (for example, certain multi-lateral development banks)
86. In the context of this Statement, the following generally would not be considered related parties:⁵⁰
 - a. Organizations meeting the inclusion principles
 - b. Organizations with which the federal government transacts a significant volume of business resulting in economic dependence such as government contractors, state and local governments, and not-for-profit organizations⁵¹

⁴⁸ Significance is assessed at the reporting entity and may differ among component reporting entities and the government-wide reporting entity.

⁴⁹ Relationship, as used in this context, refers to material transactions or events involving both parties.

⁵⁰ As described in paragraph 87 below, paragraphs 86a. – 86g. identify potential exclusions but judgment will be required to determine whether some pose risks that warrant disclosures.

- c. Organizations owned or managed by full-time employees of the federal government or members of their immediate families
 - d. Full-time employees of the federal government
 - e. Foreign governments
 - f. Organizations created through treaties or trade agreements that define common goals and means for joint action where the U.S. role in governing and financing the organizations is not significant
 - g. Special interest groups⁵²
87. Although paragraph 86 discusses the potential exclusion of certain organizations as related parties, other factors may create a need for related party disclosures for such organizations. The use of judgment will be necessary in identifying those factors consistent with the information needs described in paragraph 88.
88. Certain information regarding significant related party relationships may enable users to better understand the financial statements of the reporting entity because:
- a. related party relationships might expose the federal government to risks or provide opportunities that would not have existed in the absence of the relationship;
 - b. related party relationships can influence the way in which the federal government operates with other entities in achieving its individual objectives; and
 - c. related parties may enter into transactions that unrelated parties would not enter into, or may agree to transactions on different terms and conditions than those that would normally be available to unrelated parties.
89. For related party relationships of such significance to the reporting entity that it would be misleading to exclude information about such relationships, the following should be disclosed:
- a. Nature of the federal government's relationship with the party, including the name of the party or if aggregated, a description of the related parties. Such information also would include, as appropriate, the percentage of ownership interest.
 - b. Other information that would provide an understanding of the relationship and potential financial reporting impact, including financial-related exposures to risk of loss or potential gain to the reporting entity resulting from the relationship.

⁵¹ However, economic dependency, together with other factors, may give rise to significant influence and, therefore, a related party relationship.

⁵² Special interest groups refers broadly to organizations whose members share common concerns and try to influence government policies. Examples include but are not limited to labor unions, trade associations, religious organizations, membership organizations, and lobbying organizations.

EFFECT ON EXISTING CONCEPTS—AMENDMENTS TO SFFAC 2, *ENTITY AND DISPLAY*

90. -This section establishes conforming amendments to the Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 2, *Entity and Display*, as described in the following paragraphs.

91. Paragraph 2 is replaced with the following paragraph which describes the amended purpose and contents of SFFAC 2.

The purpose of this statement is to establish concepts regarding what would be encompassed by a Federal Government entity's financial report. The statement specifies the types of entities for which there should be financial reports (hereinafter called "reporting entities"), establishes an organizational perspective for considering the makeup of each type of reporting entity, identifies types of financial reports for communicating the information for each type of reporting entity, suggests the types of information each type of report would convey, and identifies the process and factors the Board may consider in determining whether information should be basic information, required supplementary information (RSI), or other accompanying information (OAI).

92. Paragraphs 3 - 5 are rescinded because the preamble applicable to all concepts statements, which was adopted at the time SFFAC 5, *Definitions of Elements and Basic Recognition Criteria for Accrual-Basis Financial Statements* was issued, addresses the topics covered.

93. Paragraph 6a below is inserted following paragraph 6 to recognize the importance of accountability in determining organizations to be included in the reporting entity GPFFR:

6a. SFFAC 1 also discusses accountability and users' information needs as the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. Specifically, paragraphs 71-72 state "It may be said that 'accountability' and its corollary, 'decision usefulness,' comprise the two fundamental values of governmental accounting and financial reporting. They provide the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. ...The assertion of accountability therefore leads to identifying, first, those to whom government is accountable and, second, the information needed to maintain and demonstrate that accountability." Based on the concepts established in SFFAC 1, it is clear that accountability is a fundamental goal of financial reporting to be considered in establishing the boundaries of general purpose federal financial reports.

94. Paragraph 7 is rescinded because the preamble applicable to all concepts statements addresses the topics covered.

95. Paragraph 10, first bulleted item is amended by replacing it with the following bulleted item addressing an understanding of what the reporting entity entails:

- ensure ~~information-at~~ each reporting entity includes ~~information to support accountability about all relevant organizations to support accountability~~ by including ~~all relevant organizations—those organizations~~ that are in the budget, owned by the Federal Government, or controlled by the Federal Government with risk of loss or expectation of benefit;

Comment [WP18]: Staff edit in response to HS comment

96. Paragraph 18, the last sentence is amended by changing 'earmarked collections' to 'dedicated collections.'

97. Paragraph 29 is amended by adding the following footnote after the first sentence:

The Office of Management and Budget specifies the form and content of agency financial statements, pursuant to its authority under the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990, as amended (title 31, U.S. Code, section 3515(d)) through issuance of Bulletins and Circulars. OMB intends to base form and content on the concepts contained in this Statement. Any uncertainty as to what to consider as a reporting entity would be resolved by OMB in consultation with the appropriate Congressional committees.

98. Paragraph 38 is amended to exclude references to other paragraphs amended by this Statement. Paragraph 38 is replaced with the following:

The ultimate aggregation of organizations is into the Federal Government which, in reality, is the only independent economic entity. The Federal Government encompasses all of the resources and responsibilities existing within the component reporting entities. The aggregation includes organizations for which the Federal Government is accountable as well as other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the Federal Government are such that their exclusion would cause the Federal Government's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete.

99. Paragraphs 39 -50 are rescinded because the standards herein provide guidance on the same matters. It is not necessary or appropriate to retain the guidance in SFFAC 2.

100. The sub-heading before paragraph 51 - "Other Aspects Concerning Completeness of the Entity" - is revised to read "Other Aspects Concerning Completeness of the Component Reporting Entity."

101. Paragraph 51 is replaced with the following:

Identifying the organizations to include in the reporting entity is one aspect of ensuring that the users of a reporting entity's financial reports are provided with all the information relevant to the reporting entity. However, because the only independent economic entity is the entire Federal Government, financial resources or free services are often provided from one component in the government to another component without a quid pro quo. For example, a portion of the retirement costs of Federal employees is reported by the Office of Personnel Management rather than the organizational entities employing the persons. Thus, within parameters more appropriately established in accounting standards, it is important to ensure that the reporting entity's financial reports include amounts that are attributable to the reporting entity's activities, even though they are recorded elsewhere. This is particularly important for costs associated with the use of human resources; personnel services are such a major part of most government activities. It is also important for the costs of services provided by other reporting entities, such as computer services provided by another unit.

102. Paragraphs 52 – 53 are rescinded because these paragraphs relate to issues covered in standards and are not necessary for understanding the notion of the reporting entity.

103. A new sub-heading “Need to Distinguish between Consolidation Entities and Disclosure Entities” is inserted at paragraph 53A.
104. Insert Paragraphs 53A – 53 E under the sub-heading: “Need to Distinguish between Consolidation Entities and Disclosure Entities” - The language provides a high level explanation of consolidation entities and disclosure entities. These are new terms introduced in this Statement critical to understanding the reporting entity concept in the federal government. More importantly, the language describes the need to distinguish them and the reason for this distinction in terms of financial statement presentation.

53A. The Federal Government is a large and complex organization. In order to fulfill public policy objectives, the Federal Government may use both consolidation entities (such as departments and agencies) and organizations that are distinct from consolidation entities to fulfill public policy objectives (such as financially independent organizations). These distinct organizations are referred to collectively as “disclosure entities.”

53B. Disclosure entities may maintain a separate legal identity, have a governance structure designed to insulate the organization from political influence, and/or be granted relative financial independence. Despite disclosure entities’ relative operational and financial independence, accountability for all organizations owned or controlled by the Federal Government rests with the Congress and/or the President. So, both consolidation entities and disclosure entities should be included in financial reports to provide accountability.

53C. It may be difficult to provide accountability, by meeting financial reporting objectives, through consolidated financial statements because they blur the distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities. Consolidated financial statements may obscure the fact that resources and resource allocation decisions for disclosure entities are more independent than similar decisions for consolidation entities. While consolidation entities are financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue and governed by elected officials, disclosure entities often do not rely on taxes and other non-exchange revenue for financing or elected officials for spending authority. For example, a single-column presentation of information for all organizations likely would create a risk of incorrect inferences. Such inferences may include the amount of assets and revenues available for consolidation entities to use in general government activities, and the extent to which taxpayers stand ready to liquidate liabilities and meet expenses of disclosure entities.

53D. Maintaining a distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities may more effectively meet federal financial reporting objectives. Such a distinction may be maintained through discrete presentation of information regarding disclosure entities. Nonetheless, disclosures are not a substitute for consolidation entities recognizing the financial effects of transactions with disclosure entities.

53E. Consolidated financial statements for only consolidation entities will facilitate an assessment of the financial position of the federal government and the cost of operations financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Consolidation aggregates the individual financial statements of organizations that constitute a reporting entity and results in presentation of information for a single economic entity representing consolidated activities supported by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, resources, and obligations. Consolidation entities are considered federal entities and should apply GAAP as defined in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*. The following sections discuss display of information in consolidation entity financial reports.

105. Paragraph 78 is rescinded because it is not conceptual guidance. It identifies an expectation that material differences between the recognition and measurement requirements under the FASB and the FASAB standards will be adjusted before consolidation.

EFFECTIVE DATE

106. This Statement is effective for periods beginning after September 30, 2017. Earlier implementation is not permitted.

The provisions of this Statement need not be applied to immaterial items.

APPENDIX A: BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS

This appendix discusses some factors considered significant by Board members in reaching the conclusions in this Statement. It includes the reasons for accepting certain approaches and rejecting others. Individual members gave greater weight to some factors than to others. The standards enunciated in this Statement—not the material in this appendix—should govern the accounting for specific transactions, events, or conditions.

Introduction

- A1. The federal government and its relationships with other organizations have become increasingly complex. These complex relationships make it difficult to identify federal entities for financial accountability purposes. In addition, some organizations may be viewed as “non-federal” and yet be owned or controlled by the federal government. Identifying the organizations to be included in the government-wide and component reporting entity general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs) is necessary to ensure the completeness of GPFFRs.
- A2. GPFFRs should include the varied organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable regardless of their form. Therefore, the primary reason for developing standards for the government-wide and component reporting entity GPFFRs is to ensure that users will be provided with complete financial information about the federal government. While SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*, provides criteria for determining if an organization should be included, questions have continued in this area that resulted in the need for standards.

Project History /Task Force

- A3. In 2008, the Board formed a task force to support the project. The objective of the task force was “to assist in developing the proposed standards on the boundaries of the reporting entity and specific criteria for determining whether an organization should be included.”
- A4. The task force met several times over the course of the project and also exchanged numerous ideas and recommendations electronically. The task force views and recommendations were presented to the Board for its consideration during the development of these standards. The task force’s assistance was essential and its views carefully considered by members during deliberations. The task force played an important role in the research and survey work that led to the release of the *Reporting Entity* Exposure Draft. (See Appendix E for a list of task force members.)

Summary of Outreach Efforts

- A5. The Exposure Draft (ED), *Reporting Entity*, was issued on April 3, 2013 with comments requested by July 3, 2013.
- A6. Upon release of the ED, notices and press releases were provided to the FASAB email listserv, the Federal Register, the Journal of Accountancy, AGA Today, the CPA Journal, Government Executive, the CFO Council, the Council of the Inspectors General on Integrity and Efficiency, and the Financial Statement Audit Network, and committees of professional

associations generally commenting on exposure drafts in the past (for example, Greater Washington Society of CPAs, AGA Financial Management Standards Board).

A7. This broad announcement was followed by direct mailings of the exposure draft to the following relevant congressional committees:

- a) Senate Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs
- b) Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs
- c) Senate Committee on Rules and Administration
- d) House Committee on Science, Space, and Technology
- e) House Committee on Oversight and Government Reform
- f) House Committee on Financial Services

A8. Additional types of relevant organizations were contacted with direct mailings such as museums and performing art organizations, organizations that apply FASB GAAP, and intelligence agency organizations.

A9. Thirty-nine responses were received from preparers, auditors, professional associations, and citizens. In addition, over ten participants provided testimony on the issues surrounding the project to the Board at a public hearing.

A10. The Board did not rely on the number in favor of or opposed to a given position. Information about the respondents' majority view is provided only as a means of summarizing the comments. The Board considered the arguments in each response, as well as the testimony provided at the public hearing, and weighed the merits of the points raised. Due to the complexity of the standard and the issues raised, it was deemed most efficient and appropriate to include the summary of the issues raised by respondents and disposition in the narrative relating to the Board's deliberation of the issue.

Organizational Approach to Defining Boundaries

Underlying Concepts

A11. The federal government is complex and therefore defining the boundary of GPFFRs may be difficult. Its constitutionally established powers and often its motivations and functions are different from other organizations. Despite these complexities, difficulties, and differences, accountability is a fundamental goal of financial reporting. As noted in SFFAC 1:

The federal government derives its just powers from the consent of the governed. It therefore has a special responsibility to report on its actions and the results of those actions. These reports must accurately reflect the distinctive nature of the federal government and must provide information useful to the citizens, their elected representatives, federal executives, and program managers. Providing this information to the public, the news media, and elected officials is an essential part of accountability in government.⁵³

A12. SFFAC 1 discusses accountability and users' information needs as the foundation of governmental financial reporting. Specifically, paragraphs 71 and 72 state "It may be said

⁵³ SFFAC 1, paragraph 8.

that 'accountability' and its corollary, 'decision usefulness,' comprise the two fundamental values of governmental accounting and financial reporting. They provide the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. ...The assertion of accountability therefore leads to identifying, first, those to whom government is accountable and, second, the information needed to maintain and demonstrate that accountability."

A13. SFFAC 1 explains that the federal government has a special responsibility to report on its actions and the results of those actions. SFFAC 1 discusses the information needs of both internal and external users including the citizens, their elected representatives, federal executives, and program managers because meeting user information needs is an essential part of accountability in government.

A14. An organizationally based approach to defining boundaries supports accountability to all users but particularly to external users who may be unaware of the nature of organizational relationships. Focusing on organizations helps to identify who is accountable and for what. In addition, an organizational approach provides meaningful financial statements by aligning boundaries with defined organizations for which there would likely be users of GPFFRs.⁵⁴

Identifying and Classifying Organizations

A15. The Board considered several alternative approaches to identifying organizations for which elected officials—the Congress and/or the President—are accountable. This Statement provides that reporting entities should first identify what organizations⁵⁵ are to be included⁵⁶ in the reports. The three principles for including organizations in the government-wide GPFFR are: In the Budget, Majority Ownership Interest, and Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit. This Statement also includes a provision requiring inclusion of an organization if it would be misleading to exclude it.

A16. Next, for those organizations to be included, a distinction is made between consolidation entities and disclosure entities. This distinction determines how financial information is to be presented in the GPFFR. Consolidation entity financial information is to be presented in consolidated financial statements and related notes. Disclosure entity financial information is to be disclosed in notes to the financial statements.

| **A17.** Professional judgment is required in the application of the standards in this Statement.

This Statement presents a principles-based approach to determining which organizations should be included⁵⁷ in the government-wide GPFFR because of the wide and varying relationships of the federal government. General purpose federal financial reports for the government-wide reporting entity should be broad enough to report the Congress' and the President's accountability for organizations. This ensures that the financial reports contain all the information essential for fair presentation of the government's financial position and results of operations.

⁵⁴ See SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-38, for a discussion of the organizational approach.

⁵⁵ "Organization" refers to the organization in its entirety including all funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations) for which the entity is accountable. It is used broadly and may include among others departments, agencies, bureaus, divisions, commissions, corporations, and components. .

⁵⁶ "Included" means an organization's information is either consolidated or disclosed.

⁵⁷ Note that this Statement does not specify which organizations must prepare and issue financial statements.

A18. One controversial matter addressed in this Statement was the inclusion of organizations where the ownership or control is intended to be temporary; such as receiverships, conservatorships, and entities owned or controlled due to intervention actions. The Board considered many options in developing the exposure draft and concluded that preparers and auditors would find it difficult to apply the notion of “temporary” absent clear guidance in the standards. In some circumstances, temporary relationships evolve into permanent relationships. Also, some federal government components are subject to sunset provisions and are also temporary. Because it was unlikely the Board could anticipate the full range of circumstances preparers and auditors may face, the Board proposed in the exposure draft that the same principles be applied to all organizations.

A19. A few respondents asked the Board to provide that relationships intended to be temporary be excluded but most agreed with the proposal. Some respondents also asked that the Board explain how the temporary status of the relationship should be considered in applying the principles. The Board revised the proposal to explicitly state that whether relationships are temporary or permanent should not be considered in determining whether an organization is included in the GPFFR. Instead, the revised standards explain that whether a relationship is temporary or permanent is likely to influence whether the entity exhibits the characteristics established for a consolidation entity or for a disclosure entity. The standards also acknowledge that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities would generally be disclosure entities but that these assessments should be reviewed each fiscal year to determine if the classification should change.

A20. Members discussed the potential that inclusion of such entities in GPFFRs might lead users to conclude that entities receiving temporary federal government financial assistance have become part of the federal government. The summary alerts readers that the “principles herein are not intended to establish whether an organization is or should be considered a federal agency for legal or political purposes.” The Board recognizes that its responsibility is to ensure GPFFRs meet federal financial reporting objectives and that is the focus of this Statement. By avoiding subjective provisions such as “temporary” and instead establishing principles that can be applied to all relationships, this Statement supports meeting federal financial reporting objectives.

Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR

In the Budget

A17-A21. Identification of an organization in the President’s Budget is the clearest evidence that an organization should be included in the government-wide report. Absent budgetary actions – originating with the President’s Budget and leading to appropriations – federal organizations would be unable to conduct operations. Financial reporting objectives – budgetary integrity, operating performance, stewardship, and systems and controls – could not be met if organizations identified in the budget were not included in the financial reports. Therefore, the most efficient means to identify organizations for inclusion in the GPFFR is by their participation in the budget process as evidenced by being listed in the schedule of the

Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials that provides budget account level information.

Application to Legislative and Judicial Branches

~~A18-A22~~. Although the legislative and judicial branches (and most organizations within those branches) may not be required to prepare financial statements, based on the ‘*In the Budget*’ principle, those organizations would be reported upon in the government-wide report. FASAB GAAP would be the appropriate accounting standards for those entities within the judicial and legislative branches that prepare GAAP-based financial statements. While this Statement does not require any entity to prepare and issue a GPPFR, it does enable federal reporting entities preparing and issuing GPPFRs in conformance with GAAP as defined by SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*, to determine what organizations should be included in ~~reportssuch~~ GPPFRs.

Comment [ML19]: Dacey suggestion

Organizations Receiving Federal Financial Assistance

~~A19-A23~~. The schedule of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information also sometimes identifies specific recipients of federal financial assistance. SFFAC 2 (prior to the amendments set forth in this Statement) acknowledged that the schedule sometimes names an organization to receive a “subsidy” and stated “This does not mean, however, that an appropriation that finances a subsidy to a non-Federal entity would, by itself, require the recipient to be included in the financial statements of the organization or program that expends the appropriation.” Thus, “subsidy” is the term used in SFFAC 2 (before amendments set forth in this Statement) to distinguish such “non-federal” organizations from the organizations intended to be included in the GPPFR.

~~A20-A24~~. While the provision in SFFAC 2 was correct, this ~~s~~Statement establishes standards and terms used in standards should be defined. The Board considered ways to define “subsidy” but concluded it was more appropriate to rely on the existing definition of “federal financial assistance.”

~~A24-A25~~. As exposed, the proposed language attempted to ensure organizations that receive federal financial assistance⁵⁸ as defined by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 but listed under an appropriation in the schedule of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information are not automatically included in the GPPFR. Most grants are provided through programs and the recipient organizations are not necessarily listed in the

⁵⁸ This Statement adopts the definition of “federal financial assistance” established in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996. However, an organization need not be subject to the requirements of the Single Audit Act in order to qualify as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. As defined by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, federal financial assistance is assistance that non-federal entities receive or administer in the form of grants, loans, loan guarantees, property, cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, food commodities, direct appropriations, or other assistance. For the purposes of these standards, federally-authorized support fees and other charges would be considered “other assistance” even if legislation granting authority to collect them indicates that the fees or other charges are not considered public monies of the United States.

budget. However, in some cases an organization is listed. The Board believes a means to confirm whether specifically identified recipient organizations are “non-federal organizations receiving federal financial assistance” is needed. When such organizations are listed in the budget, they should be assessed against the “majority ownership interest” and “control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit” principles before being excluded from the government-wide GPFFR.

~~A22-A26~~. Although few organizations are listed in the budget as receiving subsidies, respondents questioned (1) whether such organizations had to be subject to the requirements of the Single Audit Act to be considered, (2) whether federally authorized “support fees” would meet the definition of assistance, and (3) whether listing within the budget should be an inclusion principle given this practice. Because of these questions, the wording was clarified to provide that such non-federal organizations would be state, local, or territorial governments (or components thereof) or not-for profit organizations. In addition, the footnotes clarify that the exclusion is not limited to organizations subject to the Single Audit Act or to specific forms of financial assistance. Lastly, if an organization listed in the budget is to be excluded it is because it is neither owned nor controlled as defined in these standards.

Organizations Partially in the Budget

~~A23-A27~~. The Board deliberated the issue of certain organizations being partially in the budget (for example, some of their operations or accounts are not in the President’s Budget), such as a museum receiving substantial donor support. The Board determined organizations should be included in the government-wide GPFFR based on the “in the budget” principle. The Board further decided that such organizations should be presented in the same manner as other consolidation entities or disclosure entities, as discussed later in this Statement. Therefore, the language in the principle (“in the budget”) does not provide separate and distinct guidance for organizations partially funded by non-budgetary sources. This means the organization is either a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity and should be reported as one or the other, in its entirety.

~~A24-A28~~. Certain respondents expressed concern because donated funds are for specific purposes and are not available for general government use. They believed full consolidation may be misleading. However, entities receiving donations administer and are accountable for both appropriations and donated funds. Presently, the financial statements for museums receiving donations display consolidated totals along with separate columns for federal and donor funds. This presentation provides accountability for all funds under the entity’s management while alerting the reader to restrictions. Similar presentation at the government-wide level may be accomplished by presenting donated funds as dedicated collections to the extent they meet this definition. For example, such reporting would reveal that donor funds are unavailable for general use by the government.

Need for Additional Principles

~~A25-A29~~. While the principle “in the budget” is the most efficient means to identify organizations for inclusion, there are additional principles to be considered to identify other organizations that should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. The budget principle represents a starting point in analysis but accountability goals could not be met solely through that

principle. Because the budget's purposes differ from financial reporting objectives in many respects (such as the focus on the allocation of budgetary resource flows versus costs of operations), it is possible that organizations or activities might be excluded from the budget for reasons that do not justify exclusion from financial reports. For example, some organizations may be established to operate in a manner similar to businesses and are excluded from the budgetary process. Therefore, additional inclusion principles are necessary to ensure completeness in the context of the federal financial reporting objectives.

Majority Ownership Interest

- | ~~A26-A30~~. Ownership interests typically provide owners access to resources and exposure to risks while supporting their desired goals. Federal financial reporting objectives require that information about service efforts, costs, and accomplishments be made available. To ensure such information is included, when the federal government holds a majority ownership in an organization, the organization should be included in the GPFFR. As described in this Statement, majority ownership interest exists with over 50 percent of the voting rights or the net residual assets of an organization.
- | ~~A27-A31~~. The Board noted that some may question how to account for minority ownership interests (less than 50 percent). The Board agreed addressing minority interests through the project is likely to be less effective than allowing the GAAP hierarchy to fill any void. To address the potential question, the Board included within this Statement a footnote stating ownership interests 50 percent or less should be accounted for in accordance with the appropriate accounting standards per the GAAP hierarchy.

Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit

- | ~~A28-A32~~. When the federal government controls an organization with risk of loss or expectation of benefit, the organization should be included in the government-wide GPFFR to provide accountability. As detailed in this Statement, control involves the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits or be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations as a result of those actions. Both the power and the risk of loss or expectation of benefit aspects of the control definition should be present to justify inclusion of the organization in the GPFFR.
- | ~~A29-A33~~. For example, this Statement provides for situations where the risk of loss or expectation of benefit does not exist—in the instance of the federal government exercising regulatory powers over an organization. In these cases, the federal government is unable to exercise that power for its own benefit and rarely explicitly assumes risk of loss. Therefore, including such an organization in the GPFFR would misrepresent the financial position and results of operation of the government. This would not support achievement of the objectives of financial reporting.
- | ~~A30-A34~~. For financial reporting purposes, assessment of control is made at the reporting date and based on current legislation, rather than legislation that may or may not be enacted in the future.
- | ~~A34-A35~~. Determining control requires judgment, and this Statement provides indicators to assist in making determinations. The first set of indicators is “persuasive” as the federal

government has the authority to control and any one of the listed items would generally mean control is present. The second set of indicators requires more judgment because the set of indicators is considered in the aggregate to assess whether the federal government has the ability to control the organization.

~~A32-A36.~~ Because the federal government does not usually seek only financial benefits, the expected benefit associated with control does not have to be a financial benefit. Instead, it may be non-financial. For example, it may be in the form of a service provided on the federal government's behalf or the ability to direct the work of the other organization to deliver goods and services.

Misleading to Exclude

~~A33-A37.~~ ~~The t~~Ihis Statement includes a general provision requiring inclusion of an organization if it would be misleading to exclude it. In developing the proposal, some Board members and respondents to the proposal believed this may be problematic because no criteria are offered. However, the Board ultimately agreed the general provision could accommodate unique situations that may arise in the future. This is consistent with provisions of SFFAC 2 and the Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement 14, *The Financial Reporting Entity*.

~~A34-A38.~~ Requiring inclusion of an organization ~~it that~~ would be misleading to exclude allows for judgment in unique situations not anticipated when the standards were developed. If it were feasible to anticipate such situations and develop criteria, then there would be no need ~~for~~ the misleading to exclude provision. While there are concerns regarding possible unanticipated consequences, the Board believes the provision will be of benefit during the implementation period. If adjustments are needed, agencies may seek amendments to the standards or additional guidance as appropriate. Further, the Board also may consider whether the provision is necessary after implementation.

Comment [ML20]: HS suggestion

Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation or Disclosure

~~A35-A39.~~ Differences in purposes and governance structures by organizations may require different presentation of related financial information. This Statement provides that the reporting entity should first determine which organizations are to be included in ~~the reports~~ its GPFFRs. Next the reporting entity should classify each included organization as a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity. Different means of presenting relevant information are provided for consolidation entities and disclosure entities. Consolidation entities⁵⁹ should apply the hierarchy of GAAP established for "federal reporting entities" in Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) 34. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

Comment [ML21]: Dacey suggestion

~~A36-A40.~~ The distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities is based on the degree to which the following characteristics are met: the organization is financed by taxes

⁵⁹ Consolidated financial statements provided for "consolidation entities" will include all disclosures and required supplementary information required by existing standards. Existing standards will ensure that adequate information is provided regarding the nature and organizational structure of consolidation entities as well as the activities and future exposures.

and other non-exchange revenue, is governed by the Congress and/or the President, imposes or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government, and/or provides goods and services on a non-market basis. Maintaining a distinction between consolidation entities where financial and operational decisions are more directly governed by the Congress and/or the President, and disclosure entities that are more financially (or operationally) independent will provide information to users that is more understandable and relevant. In some cases, disclosure of information regarding an individual organization is more useful than consolidation of the individual organization's financial statements in the government-wide financial statements. In other instances, consolidation of individual organizations' financial statements is needed to provide fair presentation of activities financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, and/or relying on the taxpayers to settle liabilities.

| ~~A37-A41~~. While principle-based standards do not explicitly classify specific organizations as consolidation entities or disclosure entities, the Board considered the need to illustrate how the inclusion principles and the criteria for classification as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity might be applied to certain significant individual organizations or classes of organizations. For many classes of organizations, illustrations are provided in Appendix C. With respect to certain significant organizations with particularly unique characteristics, such as the central banking system (Federal Reserve System (FRS)),⁶⁰ a majority of the Board did not believe illustrations would be appropriate because the illustrations might become de facto requirements regarding that entity's classification.

| ~~A38-A42~~. The role of preparers and auditors is to assess each organization against the principles in paragraphs 22 – 55 and reach their own conclusions. In contrast, the role of standards-setters is to set accounting standards and consider the potential implications. In doing so, the Board acknowledges some members believe the Board should explicitly address inclusion and classification (as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity) of the FRS in GPFFRs because of the magnitude of its operations. While different individuals could reach different conclusions due to the unique and changing role of the central banking system, most members believe explicitly classifying the FRS, or any entity, at a point in time would be inappropriate and result in this Statement becoming outdated as circumstances change.

| ~~A39-A43~~. Despite the decision not to explicitly classify the FRS, the Board considered each possible classification of the FRS. This consideration did not take into account all the facts and circumstances that would be considered by the preparer and auditor. Instead, like the illustrations in Appendix C, high-level facts were considered in sufficient detail to provide reasonable assurance to the Board that preparers and auditors would consider the appropriate matters in making decisions. The majority of the Board believes the principles are sufficient to aid preparers and auditors in assessing any organization, including the FRS, and in making decisions regarding inclusion and classification as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity.

⁶⁰ The FRS comprises the Board of Governors, the Federal Open Market Committee, the regional Federal Reserve Banks, and the Bureau of Consumer Financial Protection. The Bureau was established in 2010 as an independent bureau within the FRS pursuant to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act. The law provides that the Bureau's financial statements should not be consolidated with the financial statements of either the Board of Governors or the Federal Reserve System. (The Bureau has been consolidated directly in the government-wide report to date.) For simplicity, the basis for conclusions discusses the system as a whole rather than its individual components.

~~A40-A44.~~ If the assessment of the FRS resulted in its classification as a consolidation entity, the government-wide consolidated financial statements and related notes would present information as if the FRS and other consolidation entities operate together as a single economic entity. Any balances and transactions among the consolidation entities would be eliminated. For example, all Treasury securities held as investments by the FRS and reported as liabilities by the Department of the Treasury would be eliminated. Significant additions to the government-wide balance sheet as a result of consolidating the FRS would be liabilities for deposits of depository institutions and Federal Reserve notes outstanding as well as assets for investments in non-federal organizations. Consolidation would also affect the reported operating results of the government; interest expense would be reduced by the amount paid by the U.S. Treasury to the FRS and revenue would be reduced by the amount paid by the FRS to the U.S. Treasury.

~~A44-A45.~~ If the assessment of the FRS resulted in its classification as a disclosure entity, disclosures regarding the FRS would aid users in understanding the FRS, its relationship with the federal government, any significant activities, and any risks posed to the federal government. Such disclosures would allow the reader to consider monetary policy and fiscal policy as distinct activities. The government-wide consolidated financial statements would present the results of fiscal policy. Consolidation of fiscal and monetary policy financial information, as described above, would result in elimination of some Treasury securities. Thus, the use of Treasury securities to conduct monetary policy and their elimination upon consolidation could obscure the Treasury securities (debt) that result from the fiscal policies of the federal government. Further, liabilities for Federal Reserve notes outstanding and deposits by depository institutions differ in character from liabilities arising from fiscal policy. In contrast, disclosures may provide an understanding of the relationship between monetary and fiscal policy and support consideration of these distinct activities.

~~A42-A46.~~ The Board recognizes the FRS performs a unique federal function—central banking—and there is only one organization of this type. The FRS is unique not only in its mission, but also in its governance, structure, activities, and the need to maintain independence. Its responsibilities are broad reaching and of great interest because of the impact of monetary policy on the country. The magnitude of its role and transactions led the Board to require certain minimum disclosures about the FRS. The minimum disclosures recognize that there is special interest in the activity of the central banking system. The minimum disclosures for the government-wide report are in addition to any other reporting requirements at the government-wide or component reporting entity levels. The minimum disclosures focus on governance, significant roles and responsibilities, ~~the significance and magnitude of financial actions reported by the FRS to achieve monetary and fiscal policy objectives-actions to achieve monetary and fiscal policy objectives~~, transactions with the reporting entity, risks to the federal government, and future exposures to gains and losses. The disclosures should be integrated and, depending on the circumstances, also may be required by other provisions in this Statement or other GAAP requirements.

Comment [WP22]: Two members – HS regarding “magnitude” and BD regarding “reported by” – requested more detail to align the summary with the wording in the standards.

Consolidation entities

~~A43-A47.~~ Consolidation entities generally provide goods and services on a non-market basis. That is, prices are not established solely through market transactions where supply and

demand determine price. Goods and services provided on a non-market basis may be free of charge or provided at prices that are either not economically significant or bear little relationship to the cost of the goods or services.

- | ~~A44-A48~~. Consolidation entities generally are financed through taxes and other non-exchange revenue as evidenced by inclusion in the budget. Significant risks and rewards fall to the federal government for consolidation entities. Inclusion in the budget is the clearest evidence an organization is relying on taxes and other non-exchange revenue and that elected officials are key decision makers.
- | ~~A45-A49~~. The budget is a political document serving many purposes. The 1967 *Report of the President's Commission on Budget Concepts* indicates that "the budget must serve simultaneously as an aid in decisions about both the efficient allocation of resources among competing claims and economic stabilization and growth." On the topic of coverage of the budget, the Commission recommended that "the budget should, as a general rule, be comprehensive of the full range of Federal activities." Because the budget includes "federal activities," entities listed in the budget, except those receiving federal financial assistance, generally qualify as consolidation entities.
- | ~~A46-A50~~. The assessment of whether an organization meets the attributes for a consolidation entity is based on the assessment of all the attributes and the degree to which each is met. As such, not all attributes are required to be met; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

Disclosure entities

- | ~~A47-A51~~. Disclosure entities receive limited or no funding from general tax revenues. Disclosure entities, in contrast to consolidation entities, are often structured so there is a clear barrier or limit on taxpayer financing of the entity. Disclosure entities have relative financial independence and often provide goods and services on a market basis. This may be an effort to shield the federal government from risk.
- | ~~A48-A52~~. Another contrast with consolidation entities is that with disclosure entities, the Congress and/or the President have much less direct involvement in decision-making. Decision-making may rest with a governing board insulated from political influence and there may be situations where disclosure entities have a separate legal identity. In some cases, the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent.
- | ~~A49-A53~~. It is important to recognize the continuum that exists among disclosure entities. For example, despite a greater degree of autonomy, some disclosure entities may still exercise powers that are reserved to the federal government as sovereign. Other disclosure entities may not themselves carry out missions of the federal government but, instead, are owned or controlled by the federal government as a result of regulatory or intervention actions.
- | ~~A50-A54~~. This Statement provides categories of disclosure entities primarily as a way to help identify disclosure entities. However, this Statement does not require presentation by any specific class or category and allows flexibility in presenting information about disclosure entities. The categories of potential disclosure entities include quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities, receiverships and conservatorships, and federal government intervention actions.

Quasi-Governmental and/or Financially Independent Entities

~~A54-A55.~~ This Statement describes quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities as those entities where governance and/or financial differences lead to greater independence. This Statement identifies both governance and financial characteristics that would be found in this type of entity.

~~A52-A56.~~ Quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities may include certain Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDCs), museums, performing arts organizations and universities, and venture capital funds. Because details may differ among organizations in each example type, an objective assessment may classify some individual organizations as consolidation entities rather than disclosure entities. Appendix C-Illustrations offers examples that may be useful in application.

Receiverships and Conservatorships

~~A53-A57.~~ This Statement describes receiverships and conservatorships as those failed financial institutions and banks the federal government takes control or ownership of with no goal to maintain the relationship. Absent a decision to make control permanent, such controlled or owned organizations generally would be disclosure entities.

Federal Government Intervention Actions

~~A54-A58.~~ This Statement describes federal government intervention actions as resulting from exceptional circumstances where the involvements are not expected to be permanent. SFFAC 1 acknowledges the unique nature of federal government activity and its broad responsibilities. Paragraph 50 explains “The federal government is unique, when compared with any other entity in the country, because it is the vehicle through which the citizens of the United States exercise their sovereign power. The federal government has the power through law, regulation, and taxation to exercise ultimate control over many facets of the national economy and society...” SFFAC 1 describes the federal government’s responsibility for the general welfare of the nation in paragraph 53-54 as “a broad responsibility that involves multiple goals.”

~~A55-A59.~~ With these broad responsibilities, the federal government may decide to take certain actions or intervene in certain situations. Examples may include actions to provide stability to the financial markets, key industries, states, cities, or counties. These types of federal government interventions are considered rare.⁶¹ Historically the federal government has been involved in few commercial enterprises on an equity basis or shared ownership basis.⁶² Although the federal government may not act to maximize profits, the federal government may intervene and act in capacities to protect citizens. This may ultimately lead to taking control of organizations or acquiring some form of ownership.

~~A56-A60.~~ The federal government may also intervene by providing assistance through extending loans or debt guarantees that do not meet the inclusion principles established in this Statement. Such transactions should be accounted for in accordance with the

⁶¹ The financial crisis that began in 2007 is considered to be the most severe since the Great Depression. (White Paper on Changes to Financial Regulations)

⁶² Congressional Research Service (CRS) Report for Congress RL30533, *The Quasi Government: Hybrid Organizations with Both Government and Private Sector Legal Characteristics*

appropriate accounting standards per the GAAP hierarchy. This Statement does not require additional disclosures for ~~such~~ intervention actions that do not meet the inclusion principles.

Comment [GAO23]: Edit for clarity based on Dacey comment.

~~A57-A61~~. The initial SFFAC 2 provided an exception for situations where the criteria leading to consolidation are met temporarily. Specifically, paragraph 45 of SFFAC 2 stated “The entity or any of the above criteria are likely to remain in existence for a time, i.e., the interest in the entity and its governmental characteristics are more than fleeting.” “Fleeting” may imply periods of one year or less to some and the Board considered how to clarify the term “fleeting.” Ultimately, the Board decided terms such as “fleeting” and “temporary” imply a time limit.

~~A58-A62~~. However, there may be instances where an intervention is longer than one year due to the extreme factors of the national crisis. In most instances, it is difficult to establish and meet a timeline for ending an intervention. In these instances, the focus continues to be on governance and protection, rather than maximizing profits or establishing new federal government lines of business. Although the actions may be longer than one year, the interventions are “not expected to be permanent.” The Board notes that this “non-permanent” expectation would generally lead to the entities exhibiting more of the characteristics of a disclosure entity than of a consolidation entity. This is preferable to relying on “temporary” or “fleeting” which implies that a time limit could be established.

~~A59-A63~~. A further implication the Board wishes to avoid is that organizations owned or controlled as a result of interventions are considered “federal government entities,” when applying professional standards established by the American Institute of CPAs.⁶³ This Statement recognizes that such interventions create a need for accountability but they do not make the disclosure entities arising from intervention actions “federal government entities,” or federal reporting entities. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

Comment [WP24]: The dissent alerted staff that the main point of this paragraph is only made in the final sentence. Also, the AICPA uses the term “federal government entities” in ET 203 rather than “federal entities” (as in SAS 91 which was rescinded). The addition provides needed context for this paragraph.

Component Reporting Entities

~~A60-A64~~. The Board believes there should be consistency in treatment of organizations at the government-wide and the component reporting entity levels. The reasons for including organizations at the component reporting entity level should be consistent with the reasons in the government-wide entity GPFFR. Further, classification as consolidation entities or disclosure entities should be consistent in government-wide and component reporting entity GPFFRs. The Board believes a single set of principles for inclusion and classification presented from the government-wide perspective provides for the desired consistency. This is appropriate and necessary because the government-wide reporting entity is the only federal reporting entity that is an independent economic entity.

~~A64-A65~~. Nonetheless, implementation of these principles involves the component reporting entities because the government-wide report is, for the most part, a consolidation of the

⁶³ The American Institute of CPAs establishes ethics rules for its members through its Code of Professional Conduct. Rule 203, Accounting Principles, designates three bodies to establish accounting principles for three different domains—nongovernmental entities, state and local governmental entities, and “federal government entities.” (ET Section 203, paragraph .01)

reports provided by component reporting entities. Therefore, component reporting entities must identify and include in their GPFFRs all consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity GPFFRs and government-wide GPFFR are complete.

Comment [ML25]: HS suggestion

~~A62-A66.~~ The Board believes that component reporting entities should identify consolidation entities and disclosure entities administratively assigned to the component reporting entity. Standards that are based on organization and accountability provide a more realistic view of how component reporting entities become accountable for organizations and how component entity boundaries are likely to be determined. The result will be component reporting entity GPFFRs that include all organizations for which the component reporting entity management (for example, appointed officials) are expected to be accountable.

~~A63-A67.~~ Administrative assignments to component entities are typically made in policy documents such as laws, budget documents, regulations, or strategic plans. Ultimately, component reporting entities would identify and include in their GPFFRs all consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity and government-wide GPFFRs are complete.

Comment [ML26]: HS suggestion

~~A64-A68.~~ Administrative assignments can be identified by evaluating the following three areas:

- a. Scope of the Budget Process
- b. Accountability Established Within a Component Entity
- c. Misleading to Exclude and/or Misleading to Include

~~A65-A69.~~ Component reporting entities should develop processes to ensure they identify and include those consolidation entities and disclosure entities that are: (1) within the scope of their budget process, (2) for which accountability is established within their component reporting entity, or (3) which are misleading to exclude. In rare cases, a component reporting entity may find that it would be misleading to include a consolidation entity that appears to be within the scope of their budget process or to have accountability established within the component reporting entity. While most respondents agreed with the proposal, several indicated a need for implementation guidance, especially regarding the misleading to include provision. In addition, there was some confusion about how the inclusion principles applied from the government-wide perspective relate to the administrative assignments at the component reporting entity level.

~~A66-A70.~~ The Board does not intend to provide detailed administrative assignment implementation guidance at this time. Central agencies are anticipated to determine if there is a need for coordinated guidance to be developed to ensure government-wide consistency. A coordinated effort from the central agencies could promote a process to ensure the component reporting entities are performing the necessary procedures to capture the material organizations from their perspectives and also for consideration at the government-wide level. The effective date considered this and allowed sufficient time for a coordination of efforts as well as development of any needed implementation guidance.

~~A67-A71.~~ Regarding the “misleading to include provisions,” the Board made editorial changes to clarify that they expect this to occur only in rare cases where the substance of relationships between consolidation entities differs from their form. For example, the Pension Benefit

Guarantee Corporation (PBGC) is legally established within the Department of Labor. Nonetheless, PBGC has always operated as a separate legal entity with a mandate to fund its operations from premiums and has provided separate audited financial statements since its inception. Some believe that it would be misleading to consolidate PBGC and Department of Labor financial statements. In contrast, the misleading to include provision would not be an appropriate justification for excluding an office such as the Office of the Inspector General from the consolidated financial statements of its associated Department.

- | **A68-A72.** Also, some respondents questioned whether the misleading to include provision would be applicable to disclosure entities. The Board does not believe disclosure entities can be misleading to include because disclosures explain the relationship. Such explanations would prevent misleading presentations about disclosure entities.
- | **A69-A73.** During due process, some respondents questioned the difference between the inclusion principles and administrative assignments. The inclusion principles are to be applied from a government-wide perspective; whereas administrative assignments are determined from the component reporting entity perspective. Prior to implementation of this Statement, based on initial provisions of SFFAC 2, component reporting entities apply the conclusive and indicative criteria from their perspective as individual government agencies. In some cases, no individual government agency has direct involvement in the operations of entities that nonetheless are controlled through legislation established by and/or officials appointed by elected officials. Also, some ownership documents identify the federal government as owner rather than a particular government agency. To ensure that all owned or controlled entities are included, the inclusion principles must consider the relationship of an organization and the federal government as a whole.
- | **A70-A74.** Another key difference is that administrative assignments are assessed from the component reporting entity perspective. Therefore, component reporting entities will need to adapt to a multi-step process involving varying perspectives (inclusion principles applied from a government-wide perspective and administrative assignments from the departmental perspective). Accordingly, coordination with the central agencies during the implementation process will be important.

GPFFR Consolidation and Disclosure

- | **A74-A75.** As noted above, decisions about the government-wide GPFFR require determining what organizations are to be included in the reports and identifying appropriate means to present relevant information about organizations. The final determination of the presentation of financial information through consolidation or disclosure is based upon the results of two assessments—first, if the organization is included and second, if those included organizations are classified as consolidation entities or disclosure entities.
- | **A72-A76.** The Flowchart at Appendix B is a useful tool in applying the principles established. It is helpful in the assessment and applying the standards in order. It includes paragraph references to underlying principles and major decision points.

Consolidation Entities

- | **A73-A77.** This Statement provides that consolidation entities should apply SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of*

Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. In addition, it provides for the consolidation of the financial statements of consolidation entities so citizens may assess the financial position and the cost of operations of the federal government. Consolidation of financial information regarding the activities financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, resources, and obligations where governance rests with the Congress and/or the President ensures that the reporting objectives of SFFAC 1 are met.

~~A74-A78.~~ Existing guidance may also require additional information—either through disclosures or required supplementary information—regarding consolidation entities. While the term “disclosure entities” is used to refer to organizations included in GPFFRs through disclosures, readers should not infer that disclosures would not also be provided regarding consolidation entities and related activities and transactions consistent with existing standards.

Consolidation of FASB-based and FASAB-based Information

~~A75-A79.~~ While FASAB is the appropriate source of GAAP for federal entities, the Board has considered the potential ramifications when some federal entities follow GAAP for nongovernmental entities promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (hereafter “FASB GAAP”) and their information is consolidated with information based on FASAB standards. For example, federal government corporations, the U.S. Postal Service, certain component reporting entities of the U.S. Department of the Treasury and the Department of Housing and Urban Development, and some other organizations in the executive and legislative branches have historically applied FASB GAAP and continue to do so. SFFAS 34 recognizes that “general purpose financial reports prepared in conformity with accounting standards issued by the FASB also may be regarded as in conformity with GAAP for those entities that have in the past issued such reports.” SFFAS 34 also provides that a federal reporting entity preparing audited financial statements for the first time may adopt FASB standards in the rare case that the needs of its primary users would be best met through the application of FASB standards. The acceptance of these practices raises the question of whether the information prepared under FASB standards may be consolidated with information prepared under FASAB standards in consolidated reports prepared by ~~other~~ component reporting entities and in the consolidated government-wide reporting entity.

Comment [ML27]: HS suggestion

~~A76-A80.~~ The Board has considered such issues on several occasions and provided concepts as follows:

The reporting entities of which the components [preparing reports under FASB or regulatory accounting standards] are a part can issue consolidated, consolidating, or combining statements that include the components’ financial information prepared in accordance with the other accounting standards. They need to be sensitive, however, to differences resulting from applying different accounting standards that could be material to the users of the reporting entity’s financial statements. If these differences are material, the standards recommended by FASAB and issued by OMB and GAO should be applied. The components would need to provide any additional disclosures recommended by FASAB and included in the OMB issued standards that would not be required by the other standards.⁶⁴ (SFFAC 2,

⁶⁴ In October 1999, FASAB was recognized as the Rule 203 standards-setting body for the federal government. As such, FASAB now issues the standards, rather than issuing recommendations to OMB and GAO for issuance of the standards.

Entity and Display, paragraph 78 (excerpt from section on “Financial Reporting For An Organizational Entity”))

- | ~~A77-A81~~. The Board determined in SFFAS 34 that FASB-based statements are acceptable in certain circumstances. While there may be significant differences between FASB and FASAB standards, both standards result in accrual-basis information and disclosures that aid users in understanding the information. Converting FASB-based information to FASAB-based information for consolidated financial reports of larger organizations may not be justifiable since conversion may not aid users.
- | ~~A78-A82~~. Users may be confused by the presentation of different amounts for a component in its own financial report and in the consolidated financial reports of larger organizations; particularly when both amounts would be in accordance with GAAP for federal entities per SFFAS 34. In addition, conversion imposes a cost and it is not clear that the cost is justifiable based on benefits to the user. Therefore, this Statement establishes that amounts derived for component reporting entities in compliance with SFFAS 34 may be consolidated without adjustment and, the aforementioned concepts from SFFAC 2 paragraph 78 are rescinded.
- | ~~A79-A83~~. However, if this leads to consolidation in a single line item of amounts measured differently due to differences between FASB and FASAB principles, then one would anticipate disclosures of the different accounting policies and the related amounts to aid the reader in understanding the information provided. The Board considered adopting requirements for such disclosures but believes that existing requirements and long-standing professional practices are sufficient.
- | ~~A80-A84~~. The Board initially proposed that activities measured in accordance with FASAB standards and amounts related to intragovernmental were required to be disclosed in the notes of component reporting entities to facilitate eliminations at the government-wide reporting level. However, after further consideration of the comments, the board determined this information may not be relevant for the component reporting entity GPFFRs and was more appropriately obtained in the Treasury closing package. Likewise, the budgetary reporting issues highlighted by respondents appeared to be a reconciliation and system issue that should be addressed in the Treasury Financial Manual instead of an accounting standard. Also during due process it was determined that certain component reporting entities reporting on a FASB basis convert their information to a FASAB basis upon consolidation. The preparers, auditors, and users believe the information is meaningful for their purposes. While As this may be the case in certain instances, but not all, the Board did not want this Statement to prevent those wishing to convert from doing so if it aids the users by providing this meaningful information. Hence, while conversion may be appropriate in certain situations, it is not for all.

Comment [ML28]: Edit based on HS suggestion

Comment [ML29]: HS suggestion

Disclosure Entities

- | ~~A84-A85~~. The Board believes consolidation of disclosure entities would not result in information meeting the basic qualitative characteristics of information in financial reports because it would not provide the most relevant, understandable, or consistent information. The Board believes consolidation of disclosure entities may obscure the boundaries of the risks and rewards intended to be assumed or gained. Further, assets that are not available for purposes other than the specific business operation of the non-consolidated organization

might be commingled with federal assets, and liabilities not fully guaranteed by the federal government might be added to federal liabilities. Instead, financial balances and amounts for organizations having the characteristics of disclosure entities should be kept separate from balances and amounts for those organizations having the characteristics of consolidation entities to prevent distortions to the consolidated financial statements.

~~A82-A86.~~ The Board believes SFFAC 1 recognizes the challenges that may arise in applying traditional approaches to financial reporting. SFFAC 1 paragraph 49 states "...Federal accounting and financial reporting are shaped by, and need to respond to, the unique characteristics and environment of the federal government." SFFAC 1 paragraph 105 further explains "reports must accurately reflect the distinctive nature of the federal government and must provide information useful to the people, their elected representatives, and federal executives..." SFFAC 1 also provides the qualitative characteristics of information in financial reports, by identifying these basic characteristics: understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability.⁶⁵

~~A83-A87.~~ This Statement provides flexibility in identifying needed information regarding disclosure entities because the range of disclosure entities is broad and different information may need to be disclosed to meet the reporting objectives. Providing this flexibility allows the preparer to present information judged most necessary to meet reporting objectives while also providing an understanding of the potential effect of the relationship on the consolidation entity's financial statements.

Factors in Determining Disclosures

~~A84-A88.~~ Because of the flexibility needed regarding disclosures, preparers are provided a list of factors to assist in determining what disclosures to include. Materiality is an overarching consideration in financial reporting. Preparers should consider both qualitative and quantitative materiality in determining disclosure entity presentation and disclosure. Beyond materiality, the factors provided in this Statement assist in determining the nature and extent of information regarding a disclosure entity to be provided.

~~A85-A89.~~ The factors are to be considered in the aggregate; no individual weight should be assigned or interpreted. The assessment of the appropriate disclosures should be made after considering all the factors. During due process, several respondents disagreed with the factor "*Disclosure entity views/perspective*" that provided for consideration and judgment of about how the disclosure entity views its relationship with the federal government. Most respondents did not believe this should influence the level of disclosures and noted that often the reporting entity would not be aware of the disclosure entity views. The Board recognized that there may be situations where, ~~for example, whether~~ the disclosure entity's views ~~regarding its relationship with the federal government itself as an extension of the federal government or as operationally independent of the Congress and/or the President~~ should influence the type and extent of information that is disclosed. However, it may be difficult to state operationally how this would affect disclosures in given situations. Therefore,

Comment [ML30]: Staff edit based on HS suggestion that the sentence be clarified

⁶⁵ SFFAC 1, paragraph 156.

while the Board agrees this factor may be relevant,- the Board nonetheless removed it from this Statement.

Disclosure Requirements

~~A86-A90~~. The Board recognizes that although this Statement provides flexibility in meeting the disclosure objectives, a wide variety of information is listed as examples to meet the intended objectives and there are not requirements for how information must be aggregated. Qualitative and quantitative factors are considered in determining whether information regarding a disclosure entity is presented separately due to its significance or aggregated with the information regarding other disclosure entities. If information is aggregated, aggregation may be based on disclosure entity type, class, investment type, or a particular event deemed significant to the reporting entity. For example, one reporting entity may determine it appropriate to aggregate by investment types, such as equity or loan; another by disclosure entity type, such as receiverships; and yet another by class, such as museum.

Comment [ML31]: HS suggestion

~~A87-A91~~. Further, disclosures should be integrated so that concise, meaningful and transparent information is provided. Integration is accomplished by providing a single comprehensive note regarding the disclosure. Care should be taken to ensure the objectives are met, without producing unintended consequences. Preparers should keep in mind there are associated costs and potential audit implications with any information included in a GPFFR. Incorporating by reference or including other entities' summary financial statements or summary financial information generally would result in an auditor being required to gain audit assurance on that information and thereby may result in additional audit costs.

~~A88-A92~~. The Board believes any financial information about disclosure entities in the reporting entity's GPFFR should be based on accrual basis standards specific to the type of organization while minimizing additional costs on the disclosure entity. There will be instances where information about disclosure entities is produced for reporting periods that differ from the reporting entity's reporting period. To minimize additional costs, the Board agreed that if disclosure entities have a different reporting period than the reporting entity's GPFFR, disclosure of information from a reporting period ending within the reporting entity's reporting period is acceptable. The Board performed outreach on this issue to the audit community and to the federal entity task force. Generally, the feedback supported this approach.

~~A89-A93~~. However, due to the fact there could be a large time lag, there should be a provision for disclosing significant changes in the information as a result of events occurring after the issuance of the disclosure entities' audited financial statements and before the issuance of the reporting entity's audited financial statements for a later fiscal year-end. The Board notes this would only be necessary if the disclosure entities' summarized financial statements or summarized financial information were presented. Otherwise normal transactions would be captured throughout the year so this would be a somewhat narrowed focus.

Related Parties

~~A90-A94~~. The Board determined it should define "related parties" and address them within this Statement for several reasons. Related party reporting is such a fundamental notion within GAAP and the auditing standards that addressing how related party concepts apply in the

federal domain is important. Absent clear related party standards in the federal domain, the Board believes the private sector concepts would be applied by default and that application would be inappropriate.

~~A94-A95~~. Because of the extent of the federal government's relationships—whether already established or implied—"related parties" concepts may result in numerous relationships requiring disclosure. Therefore, the Board requires disclosure of related party relationships of such significance to the reporting entity that it would be misleading to exclude information about them. For clarity of intent, the standards rely heavily on listing parties to be included and excluded.

~~A92-A96~~. In addition, this Statement provides room for judgment because one cannot anticipate all types of relationships the federal government may have or might have in the future that should be reported. While the standards identify potential exclusions that generally would not be related parties (and those that may) one should consider the many complex relationships where significant influence is exerted. Judgment will be required to determine which significant influences may pose risks that warrant disclosures and these standards do not preclude the reporting of a related party if factors deem it appropriate. The related parties category is needed to provide for disclosure of those organizations that are not included under the inclusion principles but where there is an existing relationship of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude.

~~A93-A97~~. Component reporting entities of a single controlling entity are generally subject to related party reporting requirements in other standard-setting domains but will not be considered related parties under federal standards.⁶⁶ In reaching this conclusion, the Board discussed how jointly controlled component reporting entities present information about their relationships. Presently, component reporting entities are required by OMB guidance to state in the management's discussion and analysis section that: "The statements should be read with the realization that they are for a component of the U.S. Government, a sovereign entity." In addition, existing standards require recognition of inter-entity costs to ensure that cost information is not misstated as a result of relationships between component reporting entities. While members noted that readers may need additional contextual information to understand what these complex relationships imply about component reporting entity information, the decision to exclude these entities from related party reporting placed such information requirements outside the scope of this Statement.

~~A94-A98~~. During its due process, the Board considered a request that 'related parties' language be modified to clarify that members appointed to boards as individuals and the entities they are affiliated with are not in related party relationships with the departments or agencies. The Board did not believe additional language was necessary as the broad classes of exclusions provided were sufficient. Board members noted concern with broad exclusions of board members and organizations with which they are affiliated because there may be situations where disclosures would be appropriate. Further, current practices have provided meaningful and transparent information and the Board believes this information should continue to be provided absent a change in circumstances.

~~A95-A99~~. The Board further understood the respondent's concern that the term 'related party,' as commonly used in financial reports, may imply less than arms-length transactions. The

⁶⁶ Therefore, intragovernmental transactions would not be considered related party transactions.

Board believes once federal standards are issued, the term ‘related parties’ in the federal environment will develop its own unique meaning—that is, relationships of such significance to the reporting entity that it would be misleading to exclude information if one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party’s policy decisions. There is a focus on exposures to risk of loss or potential gain as a result of the relationship. Additionally, the standards do not prevent an entity from referring to related parties as “affiliated institutions” or any other appropriately descriptive term. When doing so, it may be informative to explain the relationships by including information such as conflict of interest rules and other frameworks under which they operate.

| ~~A96-A100.~~ During due process, certain respondents asked for clarification regarding the difference between a disclosure entity and a related party. More specifically, the respondents had difficulty finding a distinction between the characteristics of a related party and those of a disclosure entity meeting the “misleading to exclude” inclusion principle. When considering whether the principles required clarification, the Board noted the key difference between related parties and included organizations is that related parties are not controlled or owned but are significantly influenced by or influencing the federal government. In considering whether an organization rises to “misleading to exclude” the Board believes this distinction between included organizations and related parties will be helpful. The Board did not believe there was a need to revise the standards.

| ~~A97-A101.~~ The Board recognizes the difficulty in applying new standards to complex relationships. However, the Board believes the standards are clear. While there is a key change in the application of principles from the government-wide perspective, central agency coordination and guidance during the implementation process will aid users in adopting this perspective.

Proposed Amendments to SFFAC 2, Entity and Display

| ~~A98-A102.~~ This Statement provides amendments to SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*. This Statement provides a description of the change to SFFAC 2 and an explanation as to why the change is being made. Most of the conforming changes are rescissions that result from movement of criteria for determining what organizations are required to be included in the federal reporting entity’s GPFFR from a concepts statement to a standards statement.

Comment [ML32]: Dacey suggestion

| ~~A99-A103.~~ Paragraphs 54—77 and 79—112 of SFFAC address concepts outside the scope of this Statement and are not amended.

| ~~A100-A104.~~ In addition, no changes are made to paragraphs 11-37 of SFFAC 2 because the Board believes these paragraphs provide the conceptual underpinning for understanding the structure of the federal government and how this relates to reporting entities for general purpose federal financial reporting. Although there may be some small differences in terminology in those paragraphs, the Board did not believe they were significant enough to warrant amendments.

| ~~A101-A105.~~ Paragraphs 47-50 of SFFAC 2 identify certain organizations or types of organizations (the Federal Reserve System, Government Sponsored Enterprises, and Bailout Entities) that could be included in the government-wide reporting entity based on the SFFAC 2 concepts but that should not be included. This Statement establishes principles to ensure provide users of GPFFRs are provided with comprehensive financial information

Comment [ML33]: Dacey suggestion

while recognizing the complexity of the federal government and its relationships with varied organizations. The principles can be applied to the organizations previously excluded and conclusions reached to include the organizations—either as consolidation entities or disclosure entities—or to continue to exclude the organizations. SFFAC 2 is being amended to ensure that concepts provide a framework for standards-setting but do not themselves establish standards by listing specific exclusions.

Other Unique Situations

A102-A106. As part of the exposure draft process, the Board also asked respondents if there were other unique situations that should be addressed within this Statement. The Board received input from respondents on several example organizations that they believe should be clarified in this Statement. The Board considered the suggestions against the goal to develop principles-based standards that could be applied to all organizations. The Board believes the standards are sufficiently clear. Therefore, the Board did not revise the proposed requirements in response to these unique circumstances.

Board Approval

A107. This Statement was approved for issuance by **X** members of the Board. **One member dissented.** The written ballots are available for public inspection at the FASAB's offices. The dissent of the member who opposed the issuance of this Statement is presented in paragraphs A108- through A115.

Formatted: Highlight

A108. Mr. Steinberg dissents because this Statement asserts that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities are part of the federal government reporting entity. He concurs there should be disclosure of the relationships of these organizations to the reporting entity, the nature and magnitude of relevant activities during the period and balances at the end of the period, and the reporting entity's future exposures to financial and non-financial risks and rewards resulting from these relationships, and has pointed to the numerous accounting standards already requiring those disclosures. However, he believes there are three compelling reasons to not specify that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities are part of the federal government entity.

Comment [GAO34]: Staff proposes edits to conform to how FASAB refers to Statements. We use "Statement" or "standards" but not "standard." The title of each document is SFFA Standards" in the plural. So – each Statement contains standards. While this is fine collectively, many writers – including staff – use "standard" when pointing to an SFFAS or to a single provision within an SFFAS. This usage may be confusing. We do not use it in official publications (those voted out by the Board). Staff made conforming changes to Mr. Steinberg's dissent. They are marked.

A109. Accounting literature has traditionally followed the postulate that, for an organization to be deemed part of a larger organization, the relationship has to be other than temporary—a condition that does not exist with the receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities. The desire to remain consistent with this postulate was pointed out by more than one respondent to the Exposure Draft. The Board nonetheless maintained that organizations for which the relationships are temporary, such as receiverships, conservatorships, or intervention entities, are part of the reporting entity, but modified the standards to state they generally would be classified as disclosure entities rather than consolidation entities. Mr. Steinberg believes the purpose of the postulate is to define the relationship that should exist in order that there be reporting, and not the form of the reporting itself.

Formatted: Underline

Formatted: Font: Bold, Underline

Comment [GAO35]: Staff notes that this is not a clear reporting of the modification. Staff requested that Mr. Steinberg describe the change differently but he declined. This is the text staff proposed: In response, the Board modified the proposed standards to explain that whether relationships are temporary or permanent should not be considered in determining whether an organization is included in the reporting entity. Instead, the standards explain that whether a relationship is temporary or permanent is likely to influence the form of reporting—that is, whether the entity is a consolidation or disclosure entity. The standards acknowledge that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities would generally be disclosure entities.

Formatted: Underline

A110. The policy of the federal government is to not engage in activities that are typically conducted by the private sector. Banking is an activity that since the nation's founding, has generally been conducted by the private sector. Although failed and failing banks are taken into receivership, it is not because the government intends to provide banking services, but

only to oversee an orderly liquidation or transfer of those banks' assets, and thereby protect the depositors. Likewise, the organizations for which the government has, from time to time, decided to provide temporary financial support, that is, intervention entities, are in sectors of the economy that the federal government recognizes are not its function: automobile manufacturing and financing, manufacture of weapons systems, commercial insurance, banking, state and local government. Including recipients of temporary financial support as part of the reporting entity, as this Statement does, can be inferred as an expansion of the federal government into areas traditionally reserved for the private sector.

A111. Some of the most strident political arguments in recent years are about the expanding reach of the federal government into the private sector. Issuance of ~~an~~ accounting standards that asserts that entities normally viewed as outside the federal government (for example, automobile manufacturers, automobile financing companies, defense manufacturers, insurance companies, privately-owned banks, state and local governments) are now part of the federal government entity supports the position of those that claim the federal government is slowly expanding its reach and becoming increasingly socialist. Accounting standards should not appear to support a political position.

A112. Indeed, the inappropriateness of stating that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities are part of the reporting entity is revealed by a disavowal and self-contradiction in the ~~S~~Statement itself. Paragraphs 51-55 identify receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities as one of the parts of the reporting entity that are deemed disclosure entities. Paragraph A63, on the other hand, recognizes that interventions create a need for accountability, but then states that this does not make the disclosure entities arising from intervention actions "federal ~~government~~ entities," that is, part of the federal government.

A113. Mr. Steinberg agrees the accountability for receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities should be disclosed, but they should not be listed as part of the federal entity based on long-standing accounting postulates, the existing policy of the federal government, and the potential appearance that the accounting standards support a particular political agenda.

A114. Mr. Steinberg also points out that ~~one of the issues for which the Reporting Entity project was started was that the federal government operates museums, performing arts organizations, and other organizations funded partly by appropriations and partly by donations, but only the portions funded by appropriations are reported in the government-wide report. The Board agrees that the entirety of these organizations, and not just the portion funded by appropriations, should be included in the government-wide report GPFFR, whether through consolidation or as disclosure entities. The requirements for this practice are stated in footnotes 12 and 40 and in the Basis for Conclusions, paragraphs A27 and A28 only, but not in the body of the Sstandards.~~

A103-A115. Mr. Steinberg ~~also dissents~~ dissents from this aspect of the Statement because he believes the Board is establishing a bad precedent by defining accounting standards in footnotes and in the Basis for Conclusions, and, particularly, when the standards will require a change from current practice. He believes that accounting requirements should be stated clearly in the body of the ~~Sstandards~~ standards in order that there be no uncertainty regarding the proper accounting and financial reporting.

Formatted: Underline

Formatted: Strikethrough

Formatted: Font: Bold, Underline

Formatted: Strikethrough

Formatted: Strikethrough

Formatted: Font: Bold, Not Strikethrough

Comment [GAO36]: To conform to staff suggested changes in the document.

Formatted: Font: Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: Bold, Underline

Comment [GAO37]: While the topic came up early in discussions, staff doesn't recall it being a reason for initiating the project. We suggest changing this to read - "...also points out that one of the issues raised early in the Reporting Entity project was that"

Comment [GAO38]: For consistency with prior references.

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Strikethrough

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Strikethrough

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.25", No bullets or numbering

Comment [GAO39]: Members may not dissent to specific aspects. They dissent to the issuance of the Statement because of specific provisions.

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Strikethrough

Formatted: Font: 11 pt

Comment [GAO40]: Staff directs the Board's attention to the edit proposed—that is moving footnote 12 to paragraph 15.

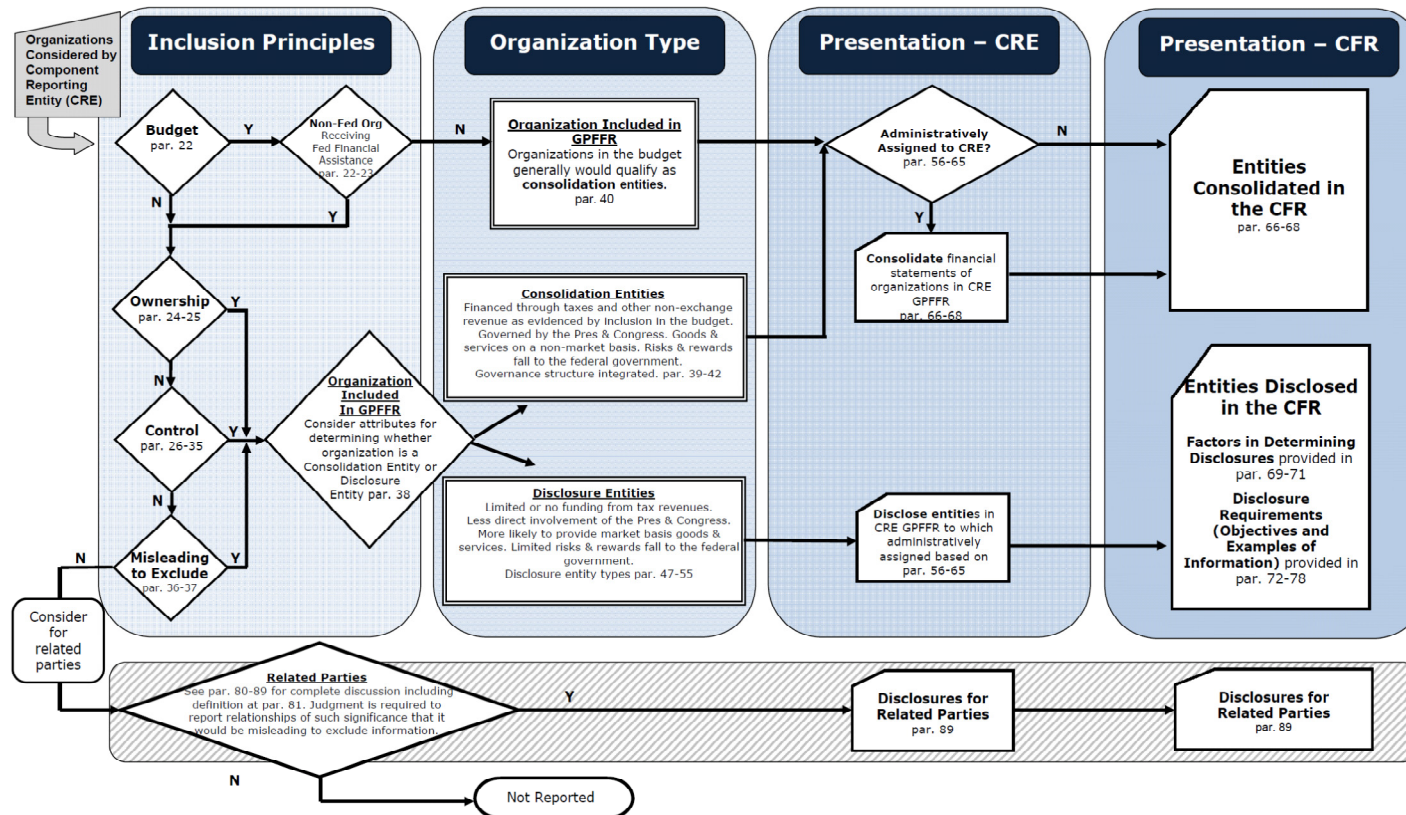
Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Strikethrough

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Bold, Underline

APPENDIX B: FLOWCHART



APPENDIX C: ILLUSTRATIONS

Preamble

These illustrations demonstrate how the provisions of this Statement could be applied to organizations given simplified hypothetical circumstances. They are for illustrative purposes only and are nonauthoritative. They do not:

1. represent actual organizations,
2. provide a thorough analysis of all the facts and circumstances that are needed to reach a conclusion in practice,
3. indicate a preferred method of analyzing facts and circumstances, and
4. substitute for the application of professional judgment to actual facts and circumstances.

These illustrations follow the sequence presented in the decision flowchart in Appendix B. All tentative conclusions are based primarily on the hypothetical circumstances presented. In most illustrations, the tentative conclusions refer to consideration of other factors by management and the auditor. This reference is included to emphasize that, in practice, consideration of all relevant facts and circumstances would be needed to reach conclusions. The reader should assume that the general reference to "other factors" means that such factors, in aggregate, supported the conclusions implied by the necessarily limited assumed facts and circumstances presented in each illustration.

Application of the standards to actual organizations requires consideration of the circumstances specific to each organization and the exercise of professional judgment. Although the limited assumed facts and circumstances presented in the illustrations may be similar to situations at a particular reporting entity, they should not be used in practice as a substitute for a complete and thorough consideration of all of the relevant facts and circumstances, which may lead to a conclusion different from the tentative conclusions in these illustrations. For example, the illustrations make certain assumptions that, in practice, require judgment of the specific facts and circumstances to make appropriate determinations.

All of the illustrations discuss administrative assignments to component reporting entities where there is only one component reporting entity relationship described. In reality, more than one component reporting entity may have a relationship with the illustrative organization. In such cases, additional information would need to be considered to determine whether other administrative assignments exist.

ABC Department

(In the Budget—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Congress established ABC Department (ABC), a federal organization, to promote entrepreneurship and innovation as a means to address national economic and environmental challenges. Provisions that govern ABC are generally prescribed in legislation and ABC accomplishes its mission through the activities of various bureaus, grants to research institutions, and contracts with universities and not-for-profit organizations.

The executive leadership of ABC consists of a secretary, deputy secretary, and three assistant secretaries. The President nominates and the Senate confirms each of these officials. These officials serve at the pleasure of the President. ABC is subject to all laws and regulations applicable to executive branch agencies.

ABC relies on appropriated public funds to conduct its mission and is listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information. The President and the Congress consider ABC's requests for resources and determine the amount that should be budgeted to provide services. Furthermore, ABC is not considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances, management determined and the auditor concurred that ABC should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because it (1) meets the first of the three inclusion principles (being listed in the budget) and (2) is not a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

Further, because it is listed in the budget, ABC generally would qualify as a consolidation entity assuming no information to the contrary. In this example, management determined and the auditor concurred that there were no facts contradicting the assumption that ABC is a consolidation entity. As a consolidation entity, ABC's financial statements should be consolidated in the government-wide GPFFR.

Administrative Assignments

The assumed facts and circumstances do not indicate ABC should be consolidated with another component reporting entity. Further consideration of ABC's relationships with other consolidation entities would be needed to determine if ABC has been administratively assigned to another component reporting entity. Further consideration would also be needed to identify any consolidation entities or disclosure entities administratively assigned to ABC.

Epsilon Corporation

(In the Budget—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Congress and the President established Epsilon Corporation as an independent government corporation to insure consumer funds placed in trust with certain types of institutions. Federal legislation established provisions that govern Epsilon's activities. Epsilon is governed by a seven member board of directors and each board member is appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. The Congress monitors Epsilon's activities by conducting hearings on Epsilon's programs and requesting Government Accountability Office (GAO) and Office of Inspector General (OIG) audits.

Epsilon is listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. Epsilon receives its funding based on legislation permitting it to receive and spend premiums from the institutions it insures. Legislation limits how Epsilon can invest proceeds from premiums and, to help ensure that Epsilon remains financially viable, legislation requires Epsilon to have a reserve fund. The board of directors determines the level of the reserve fund. If Epsilon encounters a shortfall, the organization may borrow a limited amount from the U.S. Department of the Treasury (Treasury), but any additional funding requirements must be obtained from premium assessments.

Epsilon is required to periodically report to the Congress and the President on matters such as:

- Program performance results
- Financial position, results of operations, and cash flows
- Adequacy of internal controls and systems

Furthermore, Epsilon is not considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances, management determined and the auditor concurred that Epsilon Corporation should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because it meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget) and is not a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

Further, because it is listed in the budget, Epsilon generally would qualify as a consolidation entity assuming no information to the contrary. In this example, management determined and the auditor concurred that there were no facts rebutting or contradicting the assumption that Epsilon is a consolidation entity. As a consolidation entity, Epsilon's financial statements should be consolidated in the government-wide GPFFR.

Administrative Assignments

There is no information included in the assumed facts and circumstances indicating that Epsilon should be consolidated with another component reporting entity. Further consideration of Epsilon's relationships with other consolidation entities would be needed to determine if Epsilon has been administratively assigned to another component reporting entity or has had consolidation entities administratively assigned to it. Also, further consideration would be needed to identify any disclosure entities administratively assigned to Epsilon for which disclosures are needed.

Sigma Association

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Disclosure Entity (Financially Independent))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Congress and the President established Sigma Association (Sigma) as a not-for-profit, non-taxpayer funded organization to market innovative U.S. agricultural technology worldwide and to respond to any claims of damage arising from new technology. The fundamental purpose of the corporation is specified in legislation and its mission statement is “to open new markets for U.S. agricultural technology through a cooperative marketing strategy and risk-sharing approach for market participants.”

Sigma is governed by a ten-member board of directors. Five members are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. Four members are elected by industry members. The Secretary of Agriculture (or his/her designee) serves as a voting ex-officio member of the board. No more than three of the appointed members may be from the same political party. Board members serve seven-year terms and can only be removed for cause (meaning they may not be removed for policy decisions). Also, Congress monitors Sigma’s activities by conducting hearings on Sigma’s programs and requesting GAO audits.

Sigma is financed by fees imposed on industry members. Sigma’s board of directors must establish an annual budget and legislation limits how Sigma can invest proceeds from fees. To help ensure that Sigma remains financially viable, legislation requires Sigma to have a reserve fund. The board of directors determines the level of the reserve fund after considering input from industry members. If Sigma encounters a shortfall, it may borrow a limited amount from the Treasury, but any additional funding requirements must be obtained from future fee assessments on industry members.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances, and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Sigma should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because Sigma meets the third inclusion principle (control with expected benefits or risk of loss). Indicators that the federal government can control Sigma are that the Congress and/or the President (1) established its fundamental purpose and mission through legislation, and (2) appoint a majority of the members of its board of directors (its governing body). Each of these facts individually would be sufficient to indicate control such that Sigma would be included.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, Sigma should be reported as a disclosure entity because it is a financially independent organization. Management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate, weighed them against other considerations, and used professional judgment.

Evidence suggesting that it is a disclosure entity includes:

1. Tax revenue is not appropriated for ongoing operations.

2. The corporation is relatively financially independent because it is primarily funded from a source other than appropriations. Its budget and fees are not subject to Congressional or Presidential approval.
3. Having seven-year terms for directors who are not subject to removal for policy decisions indicate a higher degree of autonomy than executive branch appointees. This governance structure vests greater decision-making authority with the board while insulating it from political influence. As a result, Congressional and Presidential oversight is less direct since they are not involved in decisions such as the level of reserves needed.
4. While Sigma is permitted to borrow from the Treasury, such borrowing is limited. This means risks to the federal government are limited. Instead, Sigma is expected to maintain its operations and meet its liabilities with revenues received from sources outside of the federal government.

Evidence suggesting that Sigma may be a consolidation entity includes:

1. The President and the Senate, who appoint and confirm, respectively, members of the board of directors as well as establish organizational authorities in legislation, have a governance role.
2. Sigma provides a service that is not available from market participants. Its fees are adjusted to recover losses rather than to respond to market influences. Hence, its fees are not market-based.

Administrative Assignment

Because each disclosure entity must be reported by at least one consolidation entity, management considered whether Sigma has been administratively assigned to the Department of Agriculture. Evidence suggesting administrative assignment to the Department of Agriculture includes that the secretary serves as an ex-officio member of the board.

As a result, management determined and the auditor concurred that the Department of Agriculture should disclose information regarding Sigma in its GPFFR. If Sigma is also administratively assigned to other component reporting entities, then those component reporting entities should also consider the need to disclose information in their GPFFRs.

Scholars University

(Not Included)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Congress and the President chartered Scholars University as a small, private, independent, not-for-profit educational institution and legislation describes the mission of the university. The legislation also indicates that the university is not an instrumentality of the federal government and that the federal government does not assume any liabilities of the university.

Scholars University is governed by a 29-member board of trustees. The Secretary of Education is an ex-officio member of the board and the remaining members are elected by the board for three-year terms. The board controls and directs the university's affairs such as determining the university's tuition and fee structure, adding or removing colleges within the university, and establishing new research institutions.

To support its mission, Scholars University receives most of its revenue from tuition, fees, and private contributions. The university receives appropriations to support some of its academic programs. The university is listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information under a Department of Education program because an amount is appropriated for Scholars University each year. Although the appropriations discuss limitations on how the funds may be used, the university generally has discretion over how it chooses to allocate funds for its academic programs and construction activities.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other information, management determined and the auditor concurred that Scholars University should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Although it meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget), management asserts that Scholars University is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance in the form of a grant. Any non-federal organization listed in the budget should be assessed against the other two principles. So, management must determine if the other inclusion principles are met or if it would be misleading to exclude the university.

The initial analysis is summarized below:

- **Ownership**—The Congress and the President chartered Scholars University as a private, independent organization. There is no evidence that the federal government has an ownership interest in the university.
- **Control**—Based on the assumptions presented, the persuasive indicators of control have not been met. While the federal government chartered Scholars University, the standards provide that further indicators of control must be present to conclude that the organization is controlled. The remaining persuasive indicators—appointing or removing a majority of the governing board members, establishing financial and operating policies, and dissolving the university and having access to its assets—are not met. The available facts and circumstances suggest that Scholars is not controlled. [Note, however, for brevity this illustration does not present an analysis of indicators of control that in the

aggregate may reveal that Scholars is controlled. Such an analysis may be needed in practice.]

- Misleading to exclude—Scholars University is a small not-for-profit that is listed in the Budget solely as a program within the Department of Education. Management determined and the auditors concurred that it is both quantitatively and qualitatively immaterial. Also, there were no other facts and circumstances that would suggest that Scholars University should be included in the GPFFR. As a result, it would not be misleading to exclude.

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Scholars University should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

Education Research Institute (ERI)

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The purpose of the Education Research Institute (ERI) is to assist state and local officials in making informed decisions regarding effective education methods. ERI was established by the Congress and the President through a public law specifying the organization's:

- status as a tax exempt not-for-profit,
- purpose and duties,
- governance structure,
- sources of financing, and
- reporting requirements.

The public law establishing ERI requires reauthorization of its operations every five years. If the Congress and the President do not authorize continued operation, ERI must cease operations and distribute its net assets to a successor organization designated by the federal government. If ERI is unable to satisfy its liabilities prior to dissolution, the federal government will assume its liabilities.

ERI is governed by a seven-member board of directors; five of whom are voting. Two members are specific federal officials within the Department of Education who serve part-time and do not have voting rights. The remaining five serve full-time, are appointed by the Association of Local School Boards, and serve six-year terms. One of these five members is elected by the board to serve as chairperson.

The legislation creating ERI designates funding of \$1 per elementary school student per year to be made available from the general fund of the U.S. Treasury to the ERI trust fund. An annual transfer to ERI is not listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information but is included in the Department of Education's Congressional Budget Justification. The board of directors is authorized to establish an annual budget not to exceed the amounts available in the trust fund. ERI may fund up to 25% of its annual budget through donations but may not use federal funds to solicit donations.

The Department of Education approves the ERI annual budget. The department also reports information related to ERI activities in its annual performance report and Congressional Budget Justification.

ERI must provide annually an audited financial report to the Department of Education and relevant Congressional committees.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that ERI should be included in the government-wide

GPFFR because the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit) is met. A persuasive indicator of control exists because the federal government can unilaterally dissolve the organization and have access to its assets and responsibility for its liabilities.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, ERI should be reported as a consolidation entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that ERI is a consolidation entity.

Evidence suggesting that ERI is a consolidation entity includes:

1. It is primarily financed by taxes.
2. Federal government has assumed the risks associated with ERI's liabilities.
3. The purpose of ERI is to assist state and local officials by providing consultation services on a non-market basis.
4. ERI's annual budget is approved by the Department of Education and the Department also provides information related to ERI activities in its annual performance report and Congressional Budget Justification. These activities show that elected officials, acting with and through politically appointed officials, make decisions regarding ERI's budget.

Evidence suggesting that ERI is a disclosure entity includes:

1. A majority of the members of the board of directors is appointed by non-federal officials.
2. ERI is able to access donations to sustain some of its operations.

Administrative Assignment

The Department of Education should consider whether or not ERI is administratively assigned to it. Evidence that indicates ERI is administratively assigned includes Education's participation in ERI's budgetary process and inclusion of information regarding ERI in its own Congressional Budget Justification. Having considered the above information and other available evidence, the Department of Education determined and its auditor concurred that it should consolidate ERI's financial statements in its GPFFR.

Mediation Corporation

(Control based on Indicators in the Aggregate—Disclosure Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Mediation Corporation (Mediation) was established as a 501(c)(3) non-member not-for-profit organization through a public law specifying the organization's:

- status and operating location,
- purpose and duties,
- governance structure,
- sources of financing, and
- reporting requirements.

The purpose of Mediation is to ensure that low-income individuals have access to mediation services to resolve non-criminal legal disputes. An assigned duty is to develop and maintain a network of state and local government organizations to deliver services financed by grants. Network members may raise funds to finance delivery of services through taxes, donations, and other grants without limitation.

The governing board comprises 13 members including Mediation's executive secretary. The President nominates candidates to fill the board member positions. A panel of local government officials participating in the network selects new members of the governing board from among the nominees. No more than seven members may be affiliated with the same political party. The members elect their chairperson from among the members. The President appoints the executive secretary and the Senate confirms the appointment. The executive secretary's term is fifteen years during which the President may only remove the appointee for cause.

Mediation is financed by an annual appropriation, interest earnings, and grants from any public or private grant-making organization. Grants must not finance more than 20 percent of its annual budget. The U.S. Attorney General approves the annual budget. Any liabilities incurred by Mediation must be settled from its assets and are not backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Government.

An annual appropriation is provided in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level for "Grants to the Mediation Corporation." The appropriation is made to the Department of Justice which transfers budget authority to Mediation. Mediation manages its cash balances similar to other not-for-profits and may retain any interest earned on unspent funds. In addition, it may apply for and receive grants from any grant making organization—public or private—subject to the 20 percent limitation.

The public law creating Mediation requires it to make annual audited financial reports publicly available. Mediation also files annual tax returns with the Internal Revenue Service. Furthermore, Mediation is considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Although Mediation meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget), it is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. To determine if Mediation should be included in the government-wide GPFFR, management considered the remaining inclusion principles—majority ownership interest and control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit.

It is unclear, based on the assumed facts and circumstances, whether Mediation is owned by the federal government and, therefore, meets the second inclusion principle. Therefore, management must consider the control indicators to determine if the third inclusion principle (control) is met. None of the persuasive indicators of control are present based on the assumed facts and circumstances so considerable professional judgment is required to determine whether—in the aggregate—the indicators provide evidence of control. The indicators suggesting federal government control over Mediation include:

1. The federal government provides significant input regarding selection of the organization's governing board members since a selection can only be made from among candidates identified by the President.
2. The President appoints a key executive—the executive secretary—and may remove him or her for cause.
3. Federal law restricts Mediation's capacity to generate revenues since only appropriations, interest earned, and grants may be used. In addition, only 20 percent of its annual needs may be met through grants.
4. The U.S. Attorney General approves the annual budget.
5. Federal law requires annual audited financial reports.
6. Federal law directs Mediation to work through a network of government agencies to provide services.

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, and using professional judgment, management determined and the auditor concurred that Mediation should be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, Mediation should be reported as a disclosure entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that Mediation is a disclosure entity.

Evidence suggesting that Mediation is a consolidation entity includes:

1. It is primarily funded by taxes.

2. Elected officials determine Mediation's budget, because at least 80 percent of its funding is appropriated to Justice. In addition, an appointed federal official, the U.S. Attorney General, approves Mediation's annual budget.

Evidence suggesting that Mediation is a disclosure entity includes:

1. Members of its governing body are selected by non-federal officials, serve longer terms than political appointees, must include members from different political parties, and may only be removed for cause. These conditions insulate the governing body from political influence.
2. Mediation has some access to non-federal funding through grants and its network of service providers is free to access non-federal funding for service delivery (subject to the 20 percent limitation).
3. Federal government has not assumed risks related to Mediation's liabilities.

Administrative Assignments

The Department of Justice should consider whether or not Mediation is administratively assigned to it. Evidence that indicates it is administratively assigned includes the Department of Justice's participation in Mediation's budgetary process. After considering the above and other factors, and using professional judgment, management at the Department of Justice determined and the auditor concurred that disclosures regarding Mediation should be presented in its GPFFR.

Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario A)

(Not Included)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Individual bicycle shop owners determined that a nation-wide network of shops and trails was needed to encourage greater reliance on bicycles for transportation and invested in a new corporation, Bicycle America (BA). BA's mission was to create a coast-to-coast network and ensure wide access to bicycling. Shares in the venture are held by local bicycle shops in all major cities.

BA is governed by a board of directors. The board controls and directs the organization's affairs and interests. Board members are elected by the shareholders to serve three-year terms.

Until recently, BA was able to finance its operations from user fees. A recent lawsuit led to serious financial challenges and cash was unavailable to meet pressing needs. Absent a cash inflow, BA was considering closing the trails. Due to exceptional citizen reliance on the trails for transportation and recreation, the federal government intervened and enacted legislation to provide funding.

The federal government provided a short-term loan to BA. The federal financial intervention to preserve BA was not separately identified in the Budget, but was part of a larger federal program within the Department of Transportation.

The funding legislation also established a temporary advisory committee to monitor BA's financial condition and inform Congress of potential issues that may warrant additional actions. In addition, the advisory committee will develop a plan to aid BA in returning to financial solvency and refinancing the short-term loan.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that BA should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Specifically, BA is not listed in the Budget. Further, based on the available information and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred BA does not meet either the remaining ownership or control inclusion principle because BA continues to be owned by common shareholders and governed by the existing board of directors. The advisory committee offers advice to the Congress and does not have authority to direct BA to act. Management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustration, it would not be misleading to exclude BA.

Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario B)

(Ownership—Disclosure Entity (Intervention))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Same as above except that in addition to the actions in Scenario A above, the federal government received shares that carry 51 percent of the voting rights of BA common stock and the advisory committee will develop a plan to sell the shares.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the changed assumptions and no information to the contrary, and using professional judgment, management determined and the auditor concurred that BA should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. When the federal government holds a majority ownership interest, albeit temporary, the owned organization should be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

The available facts and circumstances indicate that the federal government's involvement with BA is an intervention. Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that BA should be reported as a disclosure entity because (1) separate legal identity is maintained, and (2) limited funding from general tax revenues is provided. The initial determination would need to be evaluated periodically to determine if the classification remains appropriate.

Administrative Assignments

Department of Transportation was assigned responsibility for transferring funds to BA which indicates an administrative assignment. As a result, management determined and their auditor concurred that the department should disclose information regarding BA in its GPFFR. If BA is also administratively assigned to other component reporting entities, then those component reporting entities should also disclose information in their GPFFRs.

Chatham Laboratory

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Consolidation Entity (FFRDC))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Federal Department of ABC (ABC) organized Chatham Laboratory as a federally funded research and development center (FFRDC) to conduct specialized engineering research that supports ABC's mission related to infrastructure and leads to improved services. As specified in the agreement, ABC provides the physical capital and ongoing funding for the FFRDC and sets research goals for Chatham.

ABC selects a contractor to operate Chatham and conduct research consistent with the established goals. ABC is not involved in the day-to-day operations of Chatham. ABC routinely evaluates Chatham's performance and maintains a research office to review strategic plans, consider progress, and serve as a liaison to other federal institutions. ABC reports on Chatham's efforts in its own performance reports.

Chatham operations are funded entirely through appropriations provided to ABC. ABC identifies Chatham in its Congressional Budget Justification but Chatham is not specifically identified in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. Instead, amounts for Chatham are included in a larger research program which makes payments to the contractor consistent with the terms of the contract. Chatham's contract operator must submit financial and performance reports to ABC periodically. All Chatham assets belong to the federal government and the results of Chatham research are the property of the federal government. In addition, ABC would be responsible for liabilities arising from use of the facilities to conduct research such as environmental cleanup liabilities. ABC is also responsible for employee benefits in the event Chatham operations are terminated.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Chatham should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. While contracting for the operation of Chatham, officials at ABC also act as the governing body by establishing the purpose and mission of Chatham. Further, ABC continues in this role through its involvement in Chatham's strategic planning and monitoring of performance. Establishing the purpose and mission of an organization is a persuasive indicator that control exists.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, Chatham should be reported as a consolidation entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that Chatham is a consolidation entity.

Evidence suggesting that Chatham is a consolidation entity includes:

1. It is primarily financed by taxes.

2. The federal government has assumed the risks associated with Chatham's liabilities.
3. Chatham's annual budget is developed by ABC officials and information related to Chatham activities is provided in ABC's performance report and Congressional Budget Justification. This indicates that decision-making regarding the budget is exercised by elected officials through politically appointed officials and the budget process.

Evidence suggesting that Chatham is a disclosure entity includes:

1. Day-to-day operating decisions are made by a contractor.

After considering the above analysis and other factors, management determined and the auditor concurred that Chatham is a consolidation entity.

Administrative Assignment

ABC should consider whether or not Chatham is administratively assigned to it. In the example, evidence suggesting Chatham is administratively assigned includes ABC's role in Chatham's strategic planning, budgeting, and administration. Having considered the assumed facts and circumstances and other available evidence, the Department of ABC determined and its auditor concurred that it should consolidate Chatham's financial statements in its GPFFR.

Gotham Laboratory

(Not included—Economic Dependency Insufficient to Show Control)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Department of XYZ (XYZ), a department within the executive branch of the federal government, contracted with Gotham Laboratory (Gotham) to conduct specialized engineering research that fulfills a federal mission related to infrastructure and leads to improved services of XYZ. As specified in the agreement, XYZ provides funding to Gotham and Gotham's management team plans, manages, and executes the assigned research program.

XYZ serves on a panel providing input on the appointment of the board of directors for Gotham. However, the board of directors elects new members and the board manages Gotham's research. Gotham also may engage in any outside research activities approved by its board of directors.

Gotham performs services for various federal and non-federal organizations but receives 90 percent of its funding from XYZ. XYZ receives appropriated funds to support the Gotham research program. The remaining 10 percent of Gotham funding is derived from contracts with other federal agencies and private industry as well as donations. Gotham's budget is not reviewed or approved by any federal officials. Gotham is subject to the usual federal contract oversight and reporting requirements.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Gotham should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Gotham is not listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. Further, based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, Gotham does not meet the inclusion principles of either majority ownership or control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit. Although Gotham appears to be economically dependent on the federal government, it ultimately retains discretion as to whether to accept funding or do business with the federal government. Despite the influence resulting from this dependency, the federal government does not govern Gotham's financial and operating policies. Further, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustration, it would not be misleading to exclude Gotham.

Andromeda Prime Power Systems

(Related Party—GSE)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The federal government created Andromeda Prime Power Systems (APPS) as a government sponsored enterprise (GSE) to facilitate commercial space travel. APPS controls interplanetary travel among a network of commercial space stations and is subject to federal regulations regarding safety and technology transfers to other nations.

APPS is governed by a nine-member board of directors elected by common stock shareholders. Board members serve three-year terms.

APPS issued common stock and received a federal government grant to finance its initial capital and startup costs. The APPS is under no obligation to return the grant funds but is expected to promote U.S. competitive interests in the emerging space travel industry.

During the reporting period, APPS' board approved a strategic plan to expand its systems to accommodate increased commercial demands and APPS issued bonds to finance the initiative. The interest rate required by lenders indicates that the market assumes the federal government has implicitly guaranteed the payment of principal and interest. In its regulatory capacity, the federal government required APPS to establish a capital reserve and created a five-member APPS Advisory Board to monitor and advise Congress on APPS' fiscal operations.

APPS derives its revenues from fees charged to commercial organizations and receives no ongoing federal support through the Budget.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that APPS should not be reported in the government-wide GPFFR as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity. APPS is not listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information and the federal government does not have a majority ownership interest in the company.

Further, management conducted a thorough assessment of control indicators and determined the federal government does not exercise control of APPS. Regulation of APPS does not, by itself, establish control.

However, based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that APPS should be disclosed as a related party. Related parties generally include GSEs not meeting the inclusion principles, especially those organizations for which the relationship is of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about it.

U.S. Museum (Scenario A)

(In the Budget—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The U.S. Museum (the Museum) was organized to bring history and lessons about the United States to individuals through educational outreach, teacher training, traveling exhibitions, and scholarship.

The Museum is an independent establishment of the federal government and is governed by a board of trustees, known as the Museum Council. The Council has 13 voting members and 2 nonvoting members. Of the voting members, 11 are appointed by the President and serve 10-year terms (appointments are staggered) and the other 2 are appointed from among members of Congress to serve during their term. The non-voting members are selected by the Council.

The Museum receives an annual appropriation as well as private donations. Annual appropriations account for approximately 90 percent of operations and activities, with the remaining 10 percent coming from donor activities and museum sales. The museum is listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. All donations are considered to be available for use unless specifically restricted by the donor or by time. Furthermore, the Museum is not considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that the Museum should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because the Museum meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget). Further, the President and the Congress appoint the Museum Council which indicates the federal government controls the Museum which meets the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit).

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

Because it is listed in the budget, the Museum generally would qualify as a consolidation entity assuming no information to the contrary. In this example, management determined and the auditor concurred that there were no facts rebutting or contradicting the assumption that the Museum is a consolidation entity. As a consolidation entity, its financial statements should be consolidated in the government-wide GPFFR. The financial statements included should be for the entire organization and thus include the sources and uses for both the appropriations and the donated funds.

Administrative Assignment

Based on a review by management, no other component reporting entity has been assigned administrative responsibilities for the Museum. Therefore, the Museum is consolidated only directly into the government-wide GPFFR.

U.S. Museum (Scenario B)

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Disclosure Entity (Financially Independent))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The U.S. Museum (the Museum) was originally organized by volunteers to bring history and lessons about the United States to individuals through educational outreach, teacher training, traveling exhibitions, and scholarship. The Museum is intended to be a self supporting operation. Shortly after its founding, it entered into a cooperative relationship with the Department of Federal Museums, a department within the executive branch.

The Museum is incorporated as a not-for-profit organization governed by the Museum Council. The Council has 15 voting members referred to as trustees. The presidentially-appointed head of the Department of Federal Museums serves as the Council chairperson. Of the remaining voting trustees, nine are appointed by the President and five are selected and approved by the Council. Except for the chairperson, all trustees serve ten-year terms which are staggered. The Council selects a Board of Directors for the Museum and appoints the Chief Executive Officer.

The Museum is a public-private partnership which receives an annual appropriation as well as private donations, rental income, and sales revenue. No fees are charged for educational events or museum tours. Rental income from the Museum facilities is derived from rates competitive with other venues for similar events. Rental of the facilities is intended to support museum activities such that the museum can eventually be self supporting. Presently, annual appropriations account for approximately 15 percent of operations and activities, with the remaining 85 percent coming from donor activities, rental income, and museum sales. The museum is listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. The funding received from donations is restricted to use by the Museum and the trustees approve the annual budget including rental income and fundraising goals.

The Museum's employees are not federal employees. The Museum is required to fully fund any deferred compensation programs and to advise its employees that the federal government has not guaranteed their deferred compensation.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred the Museum should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because it meets the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit). Although the Museum also meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget), it is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. An assessment of the remaining inclusion principles shows that the Museum meets the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit) because it is controlled by the federal government since a majority of the trustees are appointed by the President; a persuasive indicator of control.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, the Museum should be reported as a disclosure entity. In arriving at this conclusion,

management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that the Museum is a disclosure entity.

Evidence suggesting that U. S. Museum is a consolidation entity includes:

1. Appointments to the Council are made by elected officials.
2. Museum services, educational events and tours, are provided on a non-market basis to the general public.

Evidence suggesting that U.S. Museum is a disclosure entity includes:

1. The Museum is a separate legal organization – a not-for-profit – and terms for a majority of Council members are ten-years. This insulates the organization from political influence. Further, day-to-day operations are governed by a board of directors whose members are not directly appointed by elected officials.
2. The Museum is intended to receive limited financing from taxes and market rates are charged for facility rentals.
3. The Museum is required to make explicit that any liability for deferred compensation of its employees is not guaranteed by the federal government. This indicates that limited risks are imposed on the federal government.

Disclosure entities should be presented by the component reporting entity to which they are administratively assigned and, if material, by the government-wide entity.

Administrative Assignment

Management determined and the auditor concurred the Department of Federal Museums should present the Museum as a disclosure entity in its GPFFR because the department is assigned administrative responsibility for the Museum based on appointment of its head to serve as chairperson of the Council.

Firefighters' Housing Limited Partnership

(Owned and Controlled—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Agency 123 has been authorized to establish pre-positioned housing and equipment storage facilities on federal land to ensure immediate and efficient deployment of firefighting resources in response to wildfires in remote areas. The enabling legislation allows Agency 123 to enter into a wide range of financial agreements with private-sector participants to provide housing and equipment storage for the firefighters.

The agency and a private developer formed a limited partnership—Firefighters' Housing Limited Partnership (FHLP)—to develop, operate, maintain, and own all housing and storage units and facilities within a designated area for 25 years. Agency 123 leased land to FHLP under a 25-year ground lease. At the end of the 25-year ground lease, the agency has the option to renew the partnership for another 25 years. If it does not renew, all structures and land revert back to Agency 123 in accordance with the agency's residual ownership interest. During the 25-year ground lease, Agency 123 will provide an annual payment to FHLP from its appropriated funds for management services, use of the housing by Agency 123 employees during the fire season, and equipment storage year-round.

The private sector partner is guaranteed a minimum payment from FHLP and has no ownership interest in FHLP properties. The private sector partner also is entitled to a share of profits from non-fire season vacation rentals of the housing so long as the facilities meet established condition requirements. Profits not distributed to the private sector partner are retained by FHLP and can be used for capital improvements including development of new housing in adjacent parks under similar terms.

As part of the partnership agreement, Agency 123 has significant authority to determine the policies governing FHLP's activities and to affect day-to-day decisions such as design and construction. Any debt incurred by FHLP must be authorized by the agency. Furthermore, capital and operating budgets require agency approval and financial transactions are monitored on a monthly basis by the agency's contract administration office. The partnership is required to produce audited financial statements annually.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that FHLP should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. A substantial ownership interest is present via the agency's continuing ownership interest. In addition, several control indicators are met as summarized in the following analysis of available information:

1. Agency 123 may be able to direct the partnership regarding the establishment and subsequent revision of financial and operating policies through its review and approval of operating budgets, designs, and condition of the facilities. If so, this would be a persuasive indicator of control. Management should weigh the impact of its role in directing the FHLP's financial and operating policies and consider how much discretion falls to the private sector partner.

2. Other indicators in the aggregate may indicate control. Agency 123 has significant authority to:
 - a. direct the ongoing use of assets,
 - b. approve the budgets and business plans for FHLP,
 - c. require audits, and
 - d. limit borrowing and investment by FHLP.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, FHLP should be reported as a consolidation entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that FHLP is a consolidation entity.

Evidence suggesting that FHLP is a consolidation entity includes the following:

1. FHLP provides housing to firefighters as its primary function on a non-market basis.
2. It is financed by tax revenues supplemented by any retained profits from non-fire season rentals.
3. Decisions are made by organizational leaders at Agency 123 who are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.
4. Funds transferred to FHLP will be approved through the usual budgetary process so that FHLP funding will be included in the budget approved by the Congress and the President.

Evidence suggesting that FHLP is a disclosure entity includes the following:

1. FHLP has a legal identity separate from Agency 123.
2. FHLP is authorized to provide vacation housing services to customers on a market basis and use the proceeds to first compensate the private sector partner and then reduce the cost of firefighter housing borne by the taxpayer.

As a consolidation entity, FHLP's financial statements should be consolidated by the component reporting entity to which it is administratively assigned.

Administrative Assignment

Management determined and the auditor concurred that Agency 123 should consolidate FHLP's financial statements because it is assigned administrative responsibility for FHLP based on its inclusion of FHLP funding in its budget request and its coordination and monitoring of FHLP's plans and performance.

The Blue Mountain Observatory

(Control based on Indicators in the Aggregate—Disclosure Entity (FFRDC))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Agency XYZ created an FFRDC, the Blue Mountain Observatory (BMO), to provide facilities and leadership needed to conduct scientific research in a wide range of fields, including the study of black holes. Agency XYZ is BMO's primary sponsor. University Cooperative (UC) is a not-for-profit membership corporation created by 50 universities conducting research that would benefit from use of BMO facilities. UC was created to seek the role of managing, operating, and maintaining BMO under a cooperative agreement with Agency XYZ. UC subsequently entered into a cooperative agreement with Agency XYZ.

UC is governed by a board of trustees appointed to represent each of the 50 member universities. UC trustees appoint an individual to serve as president of BMO. The trustees also oversee BMO operations including providing input on strategic plans, approving the annual program plan before its submission to Agency XYZ for approval, responding to Agency XYZ input, and monitoring financial activities including establishing investment policies. UC employs staff to perform all BMO activities and these individuals are referred to as 'BMO employees.' Member universities fund any non-BMO activities of UC.

The cooperative agreement between UC and Agency XYZ ensures close coordination between Agency XYZ and BMO employees. The agreement contains requirements necessary for Agency XYZ's oversight of both BMO's programs and UC's management activities, including the following provisions:

1. Provide input to a strategic plan developed by BMO employees in collaboration with UC trustees. The strategic plan sets the overall direction and priorities for BMO.
2. Agency XYZ must approve the annual program plan and budget for use of resources.
3. UC must provide to Agency XYZ an annual scientific report and audited financial statements.
4. Agency XYZ participates in developing a five-year strategic plan.
5. BMO and Agency XYZ must meet annually to review progress and ensure that scientific and facility priorities remain consistent with those of Agency XYZ.

UC works cooperatively with Agency XYZ to ensure the effective implementation of the strategic mission of BMO to the benefit of the research community. Mid-way through the current cooperative agreement, Agency XYZ will conduct comprehensive reviews of science, facilities, and management to inform future decisions regarding recompetition of the cooperative agreement for the facility. UC is under no obligation to continue in its role in managing, operating, and maintaining BMO.

In the most recent fiscal year, BMO received \$100 million in funding from Agency XYZ through its cooperative agreement with UC. Agency XYZ proposed the \$100 million in funding in its Congressional Budget Justification and described how the funds would be used to support the

research programs at BMO. In administering the funds provided by Agency XYZ for BMO programs, UC may:

1. expend funds to meet ongoing operational needs,
2. make annual cash contributions to employee benefits programs (accrued leave and pension plans),
3. make annual payments due under long-term leases, and
4. construct or purchase new assets so long as all resulting property is titled to BMO.

In the event the cooperative agreement with UC is terminated, Agency XYZ would assume management responsibility for the facility. Further, Agency XYZ would seek appropriations for termination expenses such as post-retirement benefit liabilities for BMO employees. However, Agency XYZ would be obligated to pay termination benefits only if funds were appropriated for that purpose.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that BMO should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. BMO is not listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information so other inclusion principles must be considered. BMO facilities are owned by the federal government and new assets are titled to the federal government. With respect to the control inclusion principle, Agency XYZ establishes the fundamental purpose and mission of BMO through its participation in strategic planning and the overall effort to ensure BMO goals are consistent with Agency XYZ research goals. This effort includes annual actions to approve BMO's annual program plan and operating budget. These actions are persuasive indicators of control.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, BMO should be reported as a disclosure entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that BMO is a disclosure entity.

Evidence suggesting that BMO is a consolidation entity includes the following:

1. BMO provides, as its primary function, research facilities and leadership to university members of UC on a non-market basis. It is financed by taxpayer funds supplemented by non-government donors.
2. Key operational decisions are made by organizational leaders at Agency XYZ who are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.

3. Funds transferred to BMO will be approved through the usual budgetary process so that use of tax revenues to support BMO is ultimately decided by the Congress and the President.

Evidence suggesting that BMO is a disclosure entity includes the following:

1. BMO has a legal identity separate from Agency XYZ.
2. The governance structure ensures that universities have substantial input regarding BMO's strategic plans and annual program plan. The significant involvement of non-governmental organizations lessens political influence.
3. BMO's liabilities are not obligations of the U.S. government.
4. BMO is authorized to accept donations from non-government organizations.

As a disclosure entity, BMO should be presented by the component reporting entity to which it is administratively assigned.

Administrative Assignment

Management determined and the auditor concurred that Agency XYZ should disclose information about BMO because it is assigned administrative responsibility for BMO based on its inclusion of BMO funding in its budget request and its coordination and monitoring of BMO's plans and performance.

Table 1: Summary Application of Standard

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
ABC Department	Yes				Yes	Organizations listed in the budget generally would qualify as consolidation entities.	
Epsilon Corporation	Yes				Yes	Organizations listed in the budget generally would qualify as consolidation entities.	
Sigma Association	No	No	Yes. A majority of the governing board members is appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate and they established its fundamental purpose and mission through legislation.		Yes		Financially independent organization
Scholars University	Yes but as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.	No	No. Scholars' board of trustees elects its respective board members. Scholars' board of trustees primarily directs the university's affairs and the university seeks sources of revenue to operate virtually in a self-sustaining manner.	Management and auditor agreement based on facts and circumstances it was not misleading to exclude.	No		
Education Research Institute	No	No	Yes, the federal government can unilaterally dissolve ERI and have access to its assets and responsibility for its liabilities.		Yes	The ERI Trust Fund is primarily funded through taxes, elected officials establish ERI's budget, services are provided on a non-market basis, and federal government assume risk.	

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
Mediation Corporation	Yes but as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. Therefore, must assess against other principles.	No	Yes. Considering the control indicators in the aggregate, the federal government controls Mediation. It provides significant input on the selection of governing board members, appoints a key executive, limits Mediation's capacity to generate revenue, approves the annual budget, requires audited financial statements, and directs Mediation to work with other governments.		Yes		Mediation's governing body is insulated from political influence and risks are not assumed by the federal government.
Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario A)	No	No. BA is owned by shareholders.	No, governing board members are elected by shareholders rather than subject to political appointment	No, Management and auditor agreement based on facts and circumstances it was not misleading to exclude.	No. Advisory committee offers advice but does not have the authority to direct BA to act.		
Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario B)	No	Yes, the federal government acquired 51% of the voting rights in BA.			Yes		Intervention activity—separate legal entity with limited financing from general taxes
Chatham Laboratory (FFRDC)	No	The assets and research results are owned.	Yes. The federal government establishes the purpose and mission of Chatham.		Yes	Yes, Chatham is primarily funded by taxes, and governance rests with the President and Congress.	

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
Gotham Laboratory	No	No	No	No, Management and auditor agreement based on facts and circumstances it was not material to exclude.	No. Although it may be economically dependent, Gotham has discretion as to whether to accept funding from the government.		
Andromeda Prime Power Systems (GSE)	No	No	No, APPS' governing body is elected by common shareholders. The APPS Advisory Board advises Congress and does not direct APPS' operations.		No, Management determined and the auditor concurred APPS should be disclosed as a related party.		
U.S. Museum (Scenario A)	Yes				Yes	Yes. The Museum is in the budget and primarily funded by taxes and governance rests with the President and Congress.	
U.S. Museum (Scenario B)	Yes but as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance	No	Yes. The President appoints a majority of the governing body's members.		Yes		The museum is a financially independent organization.

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
Firefighters' Housing Limited Partnership	No	Ownership of property is retained.	Yes. Agency 123 has significant authority to direct the limited partnership's activities and to affect day-to-day activities such as in design and construction and the partnership's purpose is to carry out federal missions and objectives.		Yes	Yes. Taxes fund the housing and risks have been assumed	
Blue Mountain Observatory (FFRDC)	No	Property is owned by the federal government.	Yes. The federal government establishes the purpose and mission of BMO.		Yes		BMO is a separate legal entity and UC plays a significant role in its governance without political influence.

APPENDIX D: ABBREVIATIONS

AICPA	American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
C.F.R.	Code of Federal Regulations
CFR	Consolidated Financial Report of the U.S. Government
CRE	Component Reporting Entity
CRS	Congressional Research Service
ED	Exposure Draft
FAR	Federal Acquisition Regulation
FASAB	Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board
FASB	Financial Accounting Standards Board
FDIC	Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation
FFRDC	Federally Funded Research and Development Center
FRS	Federal Reserve System
GAAP	Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
GAO	Government Accountability Office
GPFFR	General Purpose Federal Financial Report
OAI	Other Accompanying Information
OIG	Office of Inspector General
OMB	Office of Management and Budget
RSI	Required Supplementary Information
SFFAC	Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts
SFFAS	Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards
U.S.	United States
U.S.C.	United States Code

APPENDIX E: TASK FORCE MEMBERS

Owen Barwell, Department of Energy

Lieutenant Colonel Richard Brady, United States Marine Corp, Department of Defense

Terry Bowie, (formerly of) National Aeronautics and Space Administration

James L. Chan, University of Illinois at Chicago

Naresh Chopra, Department of Labor

Wendy Calvin, Department of Transportation

Tom Daxon, Former Oklahoma State Auditor

Ann Davis, U.S. Department of Treasury

Lynda Downing, Government Accountability Office

Abe Dymond, (formerly of) Government Accountability Office

Joel Grover, (formerly of) U.S. Department of Treasury, Office of the Inspector General

Mark Hadley, Congressional Budget Office

Regina Kearney, Office of Management and Budget

Karen Kelbly, National Credit Union Administration

Dan Kovlak, (formerly of) KPMG

Andrew Lewis, KPMG

Rick Loyd, Department of Energy

Ned Maguire, (formerly of) Office of the Dir. of National Intelligence, OIG

Sam Papenfuss, Congressional Budget Office

Reginald Royster, Department of Housing and Urban Development

Fred Selby, (formerly of) U.S. Department of Treasury, Office of Financial Stability

Gary Solamon, (formerly of) Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis

Sandy Van Booven, National Reconnaissance Office

Denise Williams, U.S. Department of Treasury, Fiscal Service

Adrienne E. Young, (formerly of) National Science Foundation

APPENDIX F: GLOSSARY

Component Reporting Entity—“Component reporting entity” is used broadly to refer to a reporting entity within a larger reporting entity.⁶⁷ Examples of component reporting entities include organizations such as executive departments, independent agencies, government corporations, legislative agencies, and federal courts. Component reporting entities would also include sub-components (those components included in the GPFFR of a larger reporting entity) that may themselves prepare GPFFRs. One example is a bureau that is within a larger department that prepares its own standalone GPFFR.

Conservatorship—A conservatorship is the legal process in which a person or entity is appointed to establish control and oversight of a company to put it in a sound and solvent condition. In a conservatorship, the powers of the company’s directors, officers, and shareholders are transferred to the designated conservator.⁶⁸

Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit—Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations or obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits.⁶⁹

Disclosures—Information in notes or narrative regarded as an integral part of the basic financial statement.

Federally Funded Research and Development Center—Federally Funded Research and Development Center (FFRDC) is a government-funded entity that has a long-term contractual relationship with one or more federal agencies.⁷⁰ FFRDCs can be privately owned or government-owned, and they serve to meet the long-term research and development needs of federal agencies that could not otherwise be met as effectively in-house or through existing contractors. 49 Fed. Reg. at 14,464; 48 C.F.R. § 35.017(a). FFRDCs are established either specifically in statute or under the statutory authority of agencies to enter into contracts, which can be inherent or specific authority, and are used to perform research and development and related tasks.

General Purpose Federal Financial Reports—General purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs) is used throughout this Statement as a generic term to refer to the report that contains the reporting entity’s financial statements that are prepared pursuant to generally accepted accounting principles. In the federal government, the report for the U.S. government-wide reporting entity is known as the consolidated financial report of the U.S. Government

⁶⁷ The larger reporting entity could be the government-wide reporting entity or another component reporting entity.

⁶⁸ Federal Housing Finance Agency Fact Sheet, Questions and Answers on Conservatorship

⁶⁹ For example, a non-financial benefit would be one where the federal government benefits from a service being provided to it or on its behalf.

⁷⁰ The Office of Federal Procurement Policy (OFPP) and Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) policies for FFRDCs apply to executive agencies, which includes “an executive department, a military department, or any independent establishment within the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 101, 102, and 104(1), respectively, and any wholly owned Government corporation within the meaning of 31 U.S.C. § 9101.” 48 C.F.R. § 2.101; see also 5 U.S.C. § 403.

(CFR) and for component reporting entities it is usually included in the performance and accountability report, the agency financial report, or the annual management report.

Government Sponsored Enterprise—Government Sponsored Enterprise (GSE) is created by Congress with its particular attributes defined in its enabling legislation and charter. Despite this diversity, there are at least four readily observable characteristics of GSEs: (1) private sector ownership, (2) limited competition, (3) activities limited by congressional charter, and (4) chartered privileges that create an inferred federal guarantee of obligations.⁷¹

Receivership—Receivership is the legal procedure for winding down the affairs of an insolvent institution.⁷²

Related Parties—Organizations are considered to be related parties in the GPFFR if the existing relationship or one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions. Relationship, as used in this context, refers to material transactions or events involving both parties.

Reporting Entity—Reporting entities are organizations that issue a GPFFR because either there is a statutory or administrative requirement to prepare a GPFFR or they choose to prepare one. The term "reporting entity" may refer to either the government-wide reporting entity or a component reporting entity.

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 2 provides criteria for an entity to be a reporting entity.⁷³ The criteria focus on whether:

- a. An entity's management is responsible for controlling and deploying resources, producing outputs and outcomes, and executing the budget or a portion thereof (assuming that the entity is included in the budget), and is held accountable for the entity's performance.
- b. An entity's financial statements would provide a meaningful representation of operations and financial condition.
- c. An entity's financial information could be used by interested parties to help them make resource allocation and other decisions and hold the entity accountable.

⁷¹ Congressional Research Service Report for Congress *Government-Sponsored Enterprises (GSEs): An Institutional Overview*

⁷² *Managing the Crisis: The FDIC and RTC Experience*, Appendix B - List of Abbreviations and Glossary of Terms; available online at <http://www.fdic.gov/bank/historical/managing/>; last accessed October 11, 2012.

⁷³ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-37, provides a discussion on Identifying the Reporting Entity for General Purpose Financial Reporting.

FASAB Board Members

Tom L. Allen, Chair

R. Scott Bell

Robert F. Dacey

Michael H. Granof

Sam M. McCall

Mark Reger

D. Scott Showalter

Graylin E. Smith

Harold I. Steinberg

FASAB Staff

Wendy M. Payne, Executive Director

Project Staff

Melissa L. Loughan

Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

441 G Street NW, Suite 6814

Mail Stop 6H19

Washington, DC 20548

Telephone 202-512-7350

FAX 202-512-7366

www.fasab.gov



Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

REPORTING ENTITY

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 47

November XX, 2014

THE FEDERAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS ADVISORY BOARD

The Secretary of the Treasury, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), and the Comptroller General, established the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB or "the Board") in October 1990. FASAB is responsible for promulgating accounting standards for the United States Government. These standards are recognized as generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for the federal government.

An accounting standard is typically formulated initially as a proposal after considering the financial and budgetary information needs of citizens (including the news media, state and local legislators, and analysts from private firms, academe, and elsewhere), Congress, federal executives, federal program managers, and other users of federal financial information. The proposed standards are published in an exposure draft for public comment. In some cases, a discussion memorandum, invitation to comment, or preliminary views document may be issued before an exposure draft is released on a specific topic. A public hearing is sometimes held to receive oral comments in addition to written comments. The Board considers comments and decides whether to adopt the proposed standard with or without modification. After review by the three officials who sponsor FASAB, the Board publishes adopted standards in a Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards. The Board follows a similar process for Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts, which guide the Board in developing accounting standards and formulating the framework for federal accounting and reporting.

Additional background information is available from the FASAB or its website:

- ["Memorandum of Understanding among the Government Accountability Office, the Department of the Treasury, and the Office of Management and Budget, on Federal Government Accounting Standards and a Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board."](#)
- ["Mission Statement: Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board"](#), [exposure drafts](#), [Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards and Concepts](#), [FASAB newsletters](#), and other items of interest are posted on FASAB's website at: www.fasab.gov.

Copyright Information

This is a work of the U.S. government and is not subject to copyright protection in the United States. It may be reproduced and distributed in its entirety without further permission from FASAB. However, because this work may contain copyrighted images or other material, permission from the copyright holder may be necessary if you wish to reproduce this material separately.

Contact us:

Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board
441 G Street, NW, Suite 6814
Mail Stop 6H19
Washington, DC 20548
Telephone 202-512-7350
FAX 202-512-7366
www.fasab.gov

SUMMARY

This Statement establishes principles to include organizations for which elected officials are accountable in general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs). The principles guide financial reporting to recognize the complex diverse organizations possessing varying legal designations (for example, government agencies, not-for-profit organizations, corporations) that are used to address public policy challenges. The principles herein are not intended to establish whether an organization is or should be considered a federal agency for legal or political purposes. Rather, the principles guide preparers of financial statements at the government-wide and component reporting entity levels in determining what organizations should be included in the reporting entity's GPFFR for financial accountability purposes.

The government-wide GPFFR should include all organizations (1) budgeted for by elected officials of the federal government, (2) owned by the federal government, or (3) controlled by the federal government with risk of loss or expectation of benefits. In addition, this Statement establishes that an organization be included in the government-wide GPFFR if it would be misleading to exclude it even though it does not meet one of the three inclusion principles. When any of these conditions exists, information regarding the organization is necessary to provide accountability.

This Statement provides for determining the most appropriate means—consolidated financial statements or disclosures—to include information about these organizations in GPFFRs. Determining the most appropriate means requires an assessment of the degree to which the following characteristics are met: the organization is financed by taxes or other non-exchange revenue, is governed by the Congress and/or the President, imposes or may impose risks and rewards on the federal government, and/or provides goods and services on a non-market basis. Note, however, not all characteristics are required to be met to the same degree; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

Generally, consolidated financial statements presenting the financial position and results of operations are appropriate for those organizations that are to a large degree financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, governed by elected officials, imposing risks and rewards on the federal government, and providing goods and services on a non-market basis. Consolidated financial statements present the financial information as if the organizations were a single economic entity. Such a presentation is needed to show—in the aggregate—the net cost financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, the assets available for use, and the liabilities to be settled in the future. Organizations to be consolidated in the consolidated financial statements within the GPFFR are referred to as “consolidation entities.” Consolidation entities should apply Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*.

Some organizations that meet the principles for inclusion are to a large degree insulated from political influence and not intended to be funded primarily by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Presenting information about these discrete organizations in consolidated financial statements would obscure the operating results and financial position of the reporting entity. Instead, information about these types of discrete organizations should be disclosed in notes to

the consolidated financial statements of reporting entities applying federal financial accounting standards. The disclosures should reveal the nature of the relationship to the reporting entity, relevant activity during the reporting period, and the reporting entity's future exposures to risks and rewards resulting from the relationship. Organizations to be disclosed in the GPFFR are referred to as "disclosure entities." While the hierarchy of generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

This Statement establishes that each component reporting entity's GPFFR include all organizations for which it is accountable. This includes all consolidation entities and disclosure entities administratively assigned to it. The GPFFR for the government-wide reporting entity would be the consolidation of component reporting entity GPFFRs including information regarding disclosure entities.

In addition to the relationships that lead to organizations being included in the GPFFR based on the principles described above, the federal government may have significant relationships with other parties. This Statement requires disclosures if one party to an established relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party in making policy decisions, and the relationship is of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about it. The parties engaged in these relationships are "related parties." With respect to related parties, the disclosures would provide information about the nature of the government's relationship with the related party and other information to aid in understanding the relationship, including exposures to risk of loss or potential gain as a result of the relationship.

This Statement is effective for periods beginning after September 30, 2017. Earlier implementation is not permitted.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Summary	1
Introduction	4
Purpose	4
Materiality	5
Standards	6
Scope and Applicability	6
Definitions	6
Organizational Approach to Defining Boundaries	7
Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR	8
In the Budget	9
Majority Ownership Interest	9
Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit	10
Misleading to Exclude	12
Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation Entities or Disclosure Organizations	13
Consolidation entities	13
Disclosure organizations	14
Identifying Organizations Component Reporting Entities Are Accountable For	16
Scope of the Budget Process	17
Accountability Established Within a Component Reporting Entity	17
Misleading to Exclude and / or Misleading to Include	19
GPFFR Consolidation and Disclosure	20
Consolidation entities	20
Reporting on Disclosure organizations	21
Minimum Disclosures Regarding the Central Banking System	25
Related Parties	25
Effect on Existing Concepts—Proposed Amendments to SFFAC 2, <i>Entity and Display</i>	28
Effective Date	31
Appendix A: Basis for Conclusions	32
Appendix B: Flowchart	55
Appendix C: Illustrations	56
Appendix D: Abbreviations	87
Appendix E: Task Force Members	88
Appendix F: Glossary	89

INTRODUCTION

PURPOSE

1. The federal government and its relationships with organizations have become increasingly complex. Notwithstanding these complexities, **general purpose federal financial reports**¹ (GPFFR) for the government-wide reporting entity should be broad enough to reflect the Congress and/or the President's accountability for those organizations. In addition, **component reporting entity** GPFFRs should allow the Congress and/or the President to hold management accountable. Although Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2, *Entity and Display*, addresses identifying **reporting entities** and criteria for including components in a reporting entity, questions have continued in this area indicating the need for standards.² Standards that can be used to identify organizations to include in the GPFFR of the government-wide reporting entity and each component reporting entity are important to meet federal financial reporting objectives.
2. This Statement guides preparers of GPFFRs in determining what organizations to report upon, whether such organizations are considered "consolidation entities" or "disclosure entities,"³ and what information should be presented. This guidance, together with existing guidance, will ensure that users of GPFFRs are provided with comprehensive financial information about federal reporting entities and their relationships so that federal financial reporting objectives⁴ are met. This Statement requires reporting entities to disclose certain information about disclosure entities administratively assigned to them. It does not require new **disclosures** regarding consolidation entities administratively assigned to reporting entities. Any existing required disclosures for the consolidated financial statements of the reporting entity, which include the consolidation entities, would continue to apply. While not specifying the inclusion or classification of the components of the central banking system, this Statement does establish certain minimum disclosures regarding the central banking system.
3. This Statement also guides preparers of GPFFRs in identifying **related parties** and in determining what information to provide about related party relationships of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information. There are disclosures

¹ Terms defined in the Glossary are shown in **bold-face** the first time they appear.

² Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2 is considered Other Accounting Literature. See Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP), Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*, for more information regarding the hierarchy.

³ "Consolidation entities" and "disclosure entities" are terms used to distinguish between entities based on the degrees to which the entity is (1) financed by taxes or other non-exchange revenue, (2) governed by the Congress and/ or the President, (3) imposing or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government and (4) providing goods and services on a market or non-market basis. See paragraphs 38 - 55 for more information.

⁴ Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*.

required regarding the nature of the relationship and financial-related exposures to risk of loss or potential gain resulting from relationships with such related parties.

4. The guidance recognizes that an organization's legal form may not reflect the substance of the relationship between the federal government and the organization. As such, the legal form or designation of an organization does not always determine whether it should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Even in cases where legislation indicates an organization is "not an agency or instrumentality" of the federal government, the organization should be assessed against the guidance contained in this Statement to determine whether it should be included in the reporting entity's GPFFR. Inclusion results from a need for accountability given the nature of the relationship between the federal government and the organization but inclusion does not change the legal form of the organization.

MATERIALITY

5. The provisions of this Statement need not be applied to immaterial items. The determination of whether an item is material depends on the degree to which omitting or misstating information about the item makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would have been changed or influenced by the omission or the misstatement.

STANDARDS

SCOPE AND APPLICABILITY

6. This Statement applies to federal reporting entities that prepare general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs) in conformance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) as defined by paragraphs 5 through 8 of Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board* (FASB). Paragraph 66 of this Statement also applies to federal reporting entities that prepare GPFFRs in conformance with GAAP as provided by paragraphs 9 through 12 of SFFAS 34.⁵
7. This Statement does not require any entity to prepare and issue GPFFRs. The purpose of this Statement is to enable federal reporting entities preparing and issuing GPFFRs to determine:
 - a. whether SFFAS 34 is applicable to an organization,
 - b. what organizations should be included in the GPFFR of federal reporting entities applying SFFAS 34,
 - c. the manner in which information should be presented for organizations included in the GPFFR, and
 - d. what disclosures, if any, are needed regarding related parties.

DEFINITIONS

8. **Reporting Entity**—Reporting entities are organizations that issue a GPFFR because either there is a statutory or administrative requirement to prepare a GPFFR or they choose to prepare one. The term “reporting entity” may refer to either the government-wide reporting entity or a component reporting entity (see definitions below).

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 2 provides criteria for an entity to be a reporting entity.⁶ The criteria focus on whether:

- a. An entity’s management is responsible for controlling and deploying resources, producing outputs and outcomes, and executing the budget or a portion thereof (assuming that the entity is included in the budget), and is held accountable for the entity’s performance.

⁵ SFFAS 34, footnote 4, indicates Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) GAAP would be the appropriate accounting standards for federal reporting entities within the executive, legislative, and judicial branches to adopt.

⁶ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-38, provides a discussion titled “Identifying the Reporting Entities for General Purpose Financial Reporting.”

- b. An entity's financial statements would provide a meaningful representation of operations and financial condition.
 - c. An entity's financial information could be used by interested parties to help them make resource allocation and other decisions and hold the entity accountable.
- 9. **Government-wide Reporting Entity**—The government-wide reporting entity's GPFFR includes all organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable based on principles established in this Statement.
- 10. **Component Reporting Entity**—"Component reporting entity" is used broadly to refer to a reporting entity within a larger reporting entity.⁷ Examples of component reporting entities include organizations such as executive departments, independent agencies, government corporations, legislative agencies, and federal courts. Component reporting entities would also include sub-components (those components included in the GPFFR of a larger component reporting entity) that may themselves prepare GPFFRs. One example is a bureau that is within a larger department that prepares its own standalone GPFFR.
- 11. **Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit**—"Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit" is the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations or to obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits.⁸ See paragraphs 26 - 35 for further discussion of control.
- 12. **Related Parties**—Organizations are considered to be related parties in the GPFFR if the existing relationship⁹ or one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions.

ORGANIZATIONAL APPROACH TO DEFINING BOUNDARIES

- 13. The federal government is unique because its constitutionally established powers, motivations, and functions are different from those of all other organizations. It is an extremely complex organization responsible for the common defense and general welfare of the nation. Although there are various perspectives¹⁰ for viewing the federal government, an organizational approach was established in SFFAC 2¹¹ as the most appropriate perspective for understanding the composition of the federal government. SFFAC 2 established that GPFFRs should include the aggregation of organizations¹² for which the federal government is financially accountable as well as other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the government are such that

⁷ The larger reporting entity could be the government-wide reporting entity or another component reporting entity.

⁸ For example, a non-financial benefit would be one in which the federal government benefits from a service being provided to it or on its behalf.

⁹ Relationship, as used in this context, refers to material transactions or events involving both parties.

¹⁰ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 13-28, discusses the organizational, budget and program perspectives of the federal government, as well as the intertwining of the perspectives.

¹¹ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-38.

¹² .

their exclusion would cause the federal government's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete.

14. Accountability demands comprehensive reporting. To provide comprehensive reporting, the federal government must report on organizations that serve varied purposes and have complex governance structures and finances. In some cases, disclosing financial and other information in the notes about an organization rather than consolidating financial and other information about all organizations may better meet federal financial reporting objectives.
15. This Statement first establishes the principles for identifying organizations to include in the government-wide GPFFR (see Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR beginning with paragraph 20) and then distinguishes between consolidation entities and disclosure entities (see Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation Entities or Disclosure Entities beginning with paragraph 38). In applying these principles and meeting the reporting requirements, “organization” refers to the organization in its entirety including all funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations). The term “organization” is used broadly and may include, among others, departments, agencies, bureaus, divisions, commissions, corporations, and components.
16. This Statement also establishes that component reporting entities’ GPFFRs must include all consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity and government-wide GPFFRs are complete (see Identifying Organizations for which Component Reporting Entities Are Accountable beginning with paragraph 56).
17. This Statement provides guidance for how to report on consolidation entities and disclosure entities (see GPFFR Consolidation and Disclosure beginning with paragraph 66).
18. This Statement establishes minimum disclosure requirements regarding the central banking system (see paragraph 79).
19. Lastly, this Statement provides for disclosure of related party relationships of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about them (see Related Parties beginning with paragraph 80).

PRINCIPLES FOR INCLUSION IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR

20. This Statement provides three principles for determining which organizations should be included¹³ in the government-wide GPFFR and also requires inclusion of organizations if excluding them would be misleading (see paragraph 37). The three principles are to be applied without considering whether the relationship is temporary or permanent. However, whether the relationship is temporary or permanent would influence the likelihood that the entity exhibits, to a greater degree, the characteristics of a consolidation entity or of a disclosure entity.

¹³ “Included” means the information is either consolidated or disclosed.

21. An organization meeting any one of the three principles below is included in the government-wide GPFFR:
- a. In the Budget
 - b. Majority Ownership Interest
 - c. Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit

IN THE BUDGET

22. An organization with an account or accounts listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information¹⁴ should be included in the government-wide GPFFR unless it is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.¹⁵ An organization listed in the budget is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance if it is:

- a. a state, local or territorial government, or component thereof, or
- b. a not-for-profit organization.

23. Notwithstanding the above provision regarding non-federal organizations listed in the budget, any entity meeting either of the next two principles (Majority Ownership Interest and Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit) should be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

MAJORITY OWNERSHIP INTEREST

24. The federal government (directly or through its components) may have an ownership interest¹⁶ in an organization. An ownership interest is a legal claim on the net residual assets of an organization such as holding shares or other formal equity instruments. The holding of an ownership interest usually but not always entitles the holder to an interest in voting rights.

¹⁴ The Budget presents information in various forms for different purposes. Only the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information should be used for determining whether information about an entity should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. In the fiscal year 2015 *Budget of the United States Government* (the Budget), the schedule was entitled “*Federal Budget by Agency and Account*.”

¹⁵ This Statement adopts the definition of “federal financial assistance” established in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996. However, an organization need not be subject to the requirements of the Single Audit Act in order to qualify as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. As defined by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, federal financial assistance is assistance that non-federal organizations receive or administer in the form of grants, loans, loan guarantees, property, cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, food commodities, direct appropriations, or other assistance. For the purposes of these standards, federally-authorized support fees and other charges would be considered other assistance even if legislation granting authority to collect them indicates that the fees or other charges are not considered public monies of the United States.

¹⁶ “Ownership interest” is the possession of substantially all of the benefits and risks incident to ownership. *FASAB Handbook as of June 30, 2014--Glossary*.

25. Majority ownership interest exists with over 50 percent of the voting rights or net residual assets¹⁷ of an organization. When the federal government (directly or through its components) holds a majority ownership interest in an organization, it should be included as either a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity in the government-wide GPFFR.¹⁸

CONTROL WITH RISK OF LOSS OR EXPECTATION OF BENEFIT

26. An organization that is controlled by the federal government with risk of loss or expectation of benefit should be included as either a consolidation entity or disclosure entity in the government-wide GPFFR. For these purposes, control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is defined as follows:

Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations or obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits.¹⁹ Both the power and either the risk of loss or expectation of benefits aspects of the definition should be met to justify inclusion of an organization. Hereafter, control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is referred to as “control.”

27. Control refers to the ability to control, whether or not that ability is actively exercised, and should be assessed at the reporting date regardless of the federal government’s ability to change it in the future. In determining whether control exists, it is necessary to determine the substance of the relationship between the federal government and the organization as it may not be completely reflected by the legal form of the relationship.
28. Control does not necessarily mean the federal government has responsibility for the management of the day-to-day operations of an organization. Rather, it is the federal government’s authority to determine or influence the policies governing those activities that indicates control.
29. Determining whether control exists requires the application of professional judgment. The federal government achieves its objectives through a wide range of organizations which individually will fall on a continuum. At one end of the continuum, it is clear that an organization does not have the power to act independently and is controlled by the federal government—such as an executive department. At the other end, the organization has the power to act independently and, while the federal government may have a level of influence, it is clear that the federal government does not have control—such as a state or foreign government.

¹⁷ For example, the federal government may hold more equity in preferred stock than all other stockholders but the preferred stock may be non-voting.

¹⁸ Ownership interests 50% or less should be accounted for in accordance with the appropriate accounting standards per the GAAP hierarchy. However, the organization should still be assessed against the control inclusion principle and the misleading to exclude principle.

¹⁹ For example, a non-financial benefit would arise when the federal government receives a service or a service is provided to others on its behalf.

Indicators of Control

30. As discussed in the following paragraphs, there are indicators that should be considered in determining whether the federal government controls an organization. As noted above, consideration needs to be given to the nature of the relationship between the federal government and the organization and judgment applied to determine whether control exists.
31. Certain individual indicators provide persuasive evidence that control exists. Because each indicator provides strong evidence of control, meeting any one indicator would generally mean control is present. These indicators are when the federal government has the unilateral authority to:
- a. establish or amend the fundamental purpose and mission of the organization,²⁰ which may include authorizing the organization to exercise sovereign powers of the federal government and requiring the organization to carry out federal missions and objectives;
 - b. appoint or remove a majority of the governing board members;
 - c. direct the governing body regarding the establishment and subsequent revision of financial and operating policies of the organization; or
 - d. dissolve the organization thereby having access to the assets and responsibility for the obligations.
32. Other indicators provide evidence that control may exist, but must be considered in the aggregate and often require the application of professional judgment in assessing. These indicators are when the federal government has the ability to or is obligated to:
- a. provide significant input into the appointment of members of the governing body of the organization or being involved in the appointment or removal of a significant number of members;
 - b. direct the ongoing use of the organization's assets;
 - c. direct investment decisions including the liquidation of investments;
 - d. appoint or remove key executives or personnel;
 - e. approve the budgets or business plans for the organization;
 - f. require audits;
 - g. veto, overrule, or modify governing board decisions or otherwise significantly influence normal operations;

²⁰ Congressionally chartered not-for-profit organizations identified under United States Code (U.S.C.) Title 36, Subtitle II and III, should not be considered controlled solely because amendments to their federal charter must be enacted through legislation. Instead, consideration of control over such organizations should be based on paragraphs 31 and 32.

- h. finance the deficits of, provide financial support to, or settle liabilities of the organization;
- i. direct the organization to work with the government to provide services to taxpayers which may include determining the outcome or disposition of matters affecting the recipients of services;
- j. establish, rescind, or amend the organization's governance framework;
- k. establish limits or restrictions on borrowing and investments of the organization; or
- l. restrict the capacity to generate revenue of the organization, especially the sources of revenue.

Situations Where Control Does Not Exist

- 33. Because of the federal government's broad powers and economic influence, control should not be inferred from either:
 - a. authority to exercise regulatory powers over an organization; or
 - b. economic dependency of the organization on the federal government.
- 34. The federal government has the power to regulate many organizations by use of its sovereign and legislative powers. For example, the federal government has the power to regulate the behavior of organizations by imposing conditions or sanctions on their operations. However, the governing bodies of the regulated organizations make decisions within the regulatory framework. Regulatory powers do not constitute control for purposes of this Statement because the federal government's interest in these organizations extends only to the regulatory aspects of the operations.
- 35. Certain organizations may be economically dependent on the federal government but ultimately retain discretion as to whether to accept funding or do business with the federal government. For example, many not-for-profit organizations rely on federal government funding but that does not mean they are controlled by the federal government. Although the federal government may be able to influence organizations dependent on federal funding or business through purchasing power, the federal government typically does not govern their financial and operating policies.

MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE

- 36. There may be instances when an organization does not meet the inclusion principles in paragraphs 22 through 35 yet the government-wide GPFFR would be misleading or incomplete if the organization were excluded.²¹
- 37. Organizations should be included in the government-wide GPFFR if it would be misleading to exclude them.

²¹ Although such situations would be rare, this Statement provides for situations that may arise.

REPORTING ON ORGANIZATIONS—CONSOLIDATION ENTITIES OR DISCLOSURE ENTITIES

38. The principles above should be used to assess what organizations to include in the GPFFR. Next, a distinction should be made between “consolidation entities” and “disclosure entities” as that distinction determines how the organizations will be reported. This distinction, which should be consistent at the government-wide and component reporting entity levels, is based on an assessment of the degree to which the following characteristics are met: the organization is financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, is governed by the Congress and/or the President, imposes or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government, and/or provides goods and services on a non-market basis.²² Note, however, not all characteristics are required to be met or to be met to the same degree; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

CONSOLIDATION ENTITIES

39. The organizations that should be consolidated in the financial statements in the GPFFR are referred to as “consolidation entities.” Generally, an organization is considered a consolidation entity if, based on an assessment²³ of the following characteristics as a whole, the organization:
- a. is financed through taxes and other non-exchange revenues.
 - b. is governed by the Congress and/or the President.
 - c. imposes or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government.
 - d. provides goods and services on a non-market basis.
40. While greater judgment will be needed to classify other organizations, organizations listed in the budget, except for non-federal organizations receiving federal assistance (see paragraph 22), generally would qualify as consolidation entities.
41. For consolidation entities, the governance structure is vertically integrated, such that the chain of command and manner of decision-making leads directly to elected officials. Vertical integration may include the establishment of organizational authorities, development and/or approval of budgets, and the appointment of organizational leaders by elected officials.
42. Entities for which the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent, such as receiverships, conservatorships, and other intervention actions, would be less likely to meet these characteristics as a whole. Such entities generally would not be classified as consolidation entities.

²² Goods and services are provided on a non-market basis when they are provided free of charge or at charges that bear little relationship to the cost of providing such goods or services.

²³ As discussed in paragraph 38, not all characteristics are required to be met or to be met to the same degree; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

DISCLOSURE ENTITIES

43. The federal government has relationships with organizations afforded a greater degree of autonomy than consolidation entities. Some organizations may exercise powers that are reserved to the federal government as sovereign. Other organizations may not themselves carry out missions of the federal government but, instead, are owned or controlled by the federal government as a result of (a) regulatory actions (such as organizations in **receivership or conservatorship**) or (b) other federal government intervention actions. Under such regulatory or other intervention actions, the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent and such entities generally would be classified as disclosure entities when considering the characteristics taken as a whole. To avoid obscuring information about these more autonomous organizations while still providing accountability, such organizations are to be disclosed rather than consolidated in GPFFRs. Hereafter, these organizations are referred to as “disclosure entities.”
44. Disclosure entities may maintain a separate legal identity, have a governance structure that vests most decision-making authorities in a governing body to insulate the organization from political influence, and/or have relative financial independence.
45. Disclosure entities may receive limited or no funding from general tax revenues. The Congress and/or the President have less direct involvement in decision-making (governance) than in consolidation entities. Limited risks and rewards fall to the federal government. Disclosure entities may provide the same or similar goods and services that consolidation entities do, but are more likely to provide them on a market basis.²⁴
46. Disclosure entities may include but are not limited to: quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities, organizations in receiverships and conservatorships, and organizations owned or controlled through federal government intervention actions. As noted above, in some cases, the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent. The following disclosure entity types, while not inclusive of all the types, are presented to assist in identifying organizations that are disclosure entities. The accompanying Appendix C—Illustrations offers non-authoritative hypothetical examples that may be useful in understanding the application of the standards.

Quasi-Governmental and/or Financially Independent Entities

47. Quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities have relationships with the federal government that are not temporary. Such relationships may be considered long-term, or even permanent in some cases, when compared to other types of disclosure entities. Quasi-governmental and financially independent entities have different governance and financial arrangements. Their classification takes into consideration such factors as:
 - a. whether the governance of the entity is through officials appointed for terms aligning with the appointing official versus longer-term appointments or other governance structures intended to insulate the entity from political influence;

²⁴ Goods and services are provided on a market basis when prices are based on the prices charged in a competitive marketplace between willing buyers and sellers.

- b. whether the entity is financed primarily through taxes and other non-exchange revenues versus limited or no such financing; and
 - c. whether the entity provides goods and services on a non-market basis versus provides goods and services on a market basis.
48. Governance differences typically lead to greater independence. Characteristics may include the following:
- a. Longer appointments of key executives or governing boards to allow these appointees a degree of independence from the Congress and/or the President
 - b. Delegated operational authority to provide a service or execute a program in a manner similar to private business enterprises
 - c. Private sector legal characteristics, such as not-for-profit status under the Internal Revenue Code
 - d. Exemption by statute from laws or regulations dealing with the federal budget, funds, personnel, ethics, acquisition, property, or works
 - e. Voluntary association with the federal government and shared purposes to implement government policies
49. Financial differences typically lead to greater fiscal autonomy. Characteristics may include the following:
- a. Primarily funded from a source other than appropriations
 - b. Delegated financial authority to provide a service or execute a program in a manner similar to private business enterprises
 - c. Principally engaged in selling goods and/or services to organizations outside of the federal government
 - d. Intended, in the normal course of its operations, to maintain its operations and meet its liabilities from revenues received from sources outside of the federal government
50. Not all entities of a given type will meet the factors above. These factors are provided to assist in identifying entities that are quasi-governmental and/or financially independent. Examples of the types of entities that could be considered quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities are **Federally Funded Research and Development Centers**, museums, performing arts organizations, universities, and venture capital funds. Each entity should be assessed objectively since there are likely to be differences among the entities within these example types such that some should be classified as consolidation entities and others as disclosure entities.

Receiverships and Conservatorships

51. The federal government may take control or ownership of failed financial institutions, such as banks, with no goal to maintain control or ownership. Receiverships or conservatorships are established to liquidate failing financial institutions or to guide such institutions back to safe and sound conditions.²⁵ Entities controlled or owned through receiverships or conservatorships are generally disclosure entities.

Federal Government Intervention Actions Resulting in Control or Ownership

52. In exceptional circumstances such as economic instability or a national security crisis, the federal government may intervene in organizations not previously meeting the inclusion principles. Interventions arise because of the federal government's broad responsibility for the well-being of the country. Some, but not all, interventions establish ownership or control such that the organization then meets the inclusion principles. Although intervention actions are not expected to be permanent, they may not be subject to a defined time limit.
53. Typically federal government intervention actions are not routine activities. Strategic planning documents are unlikely to include objectives to routinely initiate such interventions or to permanently operate organizations acquired through interventions.
54. Examples of intervention actions resulting in control or ownership include:
- a. The federal government provides financial support and, in doing so, obtains control of an established organization but expects to relinquish or cede control.
 - b. The federal government acquires an ownership interest in an organization but expects to end its interest as soon as practicable.
55. The relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent and such entities generally would be classified as disclosure entities when considering the characteristics taken as whole. Nonetheless, entities controlled or owned as a result of intervention actions at the fiscal year-end must be assessed to confirm the classification.

IDENTIFYING ORGANIZATIONS FOR WHICH COMPONENT REPORTING ENTITIES ARE ACCOUNTABLE

56. The government-wide reporting entity is the only federal reporting entity that is an independent economic entity²⁶ and the inclusion principles are expressed from the perspective of the federal government. However, GPFFRs for the government-wide reporting entity represent a consolidation of component reporting entity GPFFRs. Therefore, component reporting entities must identify and include in their GPFFRs all

²⁵ For example, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) is an independent agency created by the Congress with the mission "to maintain stability and public confidence in the nation's financial system by: insuring deposits; examining and supervising financial institutions for safety and soundness and consumer protection; and, managing receiverships."

²⁶ SFFAC 2, paragraph 38.

consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity GPFFRs and government-wide GPFFR are complete.

57. A component reporting entity's GPFFR should include all organizations that would allow the users to hold the component reporting entity's management (such as appointed officials or other agency heads) accountable for implementation of public policy decisions. Inclusion would also reveal the risks inherent in component reporting entity operations, and thereby enhance accountability to the public. Each component reporting entity is accountable for all consolidation entities²⁷ and disclosure entities administratively assigned to it.
58. Administrative assignments to component reporting entities are typically made in laws and policy documents such as statutes, budget documents, regulations, or strategic plans. Administrative assignments can be identified by evaluating:²⁸
 - a. Scope of the Budget Process
 - b. Accountability Established Within a Component Reporting Entity
 - c. Misleading to Exclude and/or Misleading to Include

SCOPE OF THE BUDGET PROCESS

59. Consolidation entities and disclosure entities subject to the budget approval and oversight process of the component reporting entity head should be included in the component reporting entity GPFFR. Each component reporting entity should include:
 - a. all consolidation entities listed within its section of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives--Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information,²⁹ and
 - b. all disclosure entities included within its congressional budget justification.³⁰

ACCOUNTABILITY ESTABLISHED WITHIN A COMPONENT REPORTING ENTITY

²⁷ A consolidation entity comprises all consolidation entities administratively assigned to it and should present information about disclosure entities assigned to it.

²⁸ Component reporting entities should develop processes to ensure they identify and assess any organizations (1) within the scope of their budget process, (2) for which accountability is established within their component reporting entity, or (3) which are misleading to exclude. It is anticipated that central agencies will determine if there is a need for coordinated guidance to ensure government-wide consistency.

²⁹ The Budget presents information in various forms for different purposes. Only the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information should be used for determining whether information about an entity should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. In the fiscal year 2015 *Budget of the United States Government* (the Budget), the schedule was entitled “*Federal Budget by Agency and Account*.”

³⁰ A congressional budget justification is a document submitted annually to Congress to justify an organization's budget request.

60. Consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which a component reporting entity has been assigned accountability responsibilities should be included in the GPFFR of that entity. Determining whether accountability was established or assigned to a component reporting entity requires the consideration of certain indicators and the application of professional judgment. Indicators³¹ that accountability has been established in the component reporting entity include:
- a. Statutes or regulations establishing an organization state that it is assigned to or part of a larger federal organization.
 - b. An organization is included in the component reporting entity's published organization chart.
 - c. The component reporting entity acquires and/or monitors³² ownership interests in organizations where there are ongoing responsibilities³³ such as:
 - i. coordinating and/or conveying input on strategic plans,
 - ii. providing appropriated funds to the organization and receiving requests for funding in the current and/or future years,
 - iii. administering any federal grants or contracts awarded to the organization,
 - iv. monitoring activities and/or reporting on outcomes, or
 - v. monitoring the value of the ownership interest.
 - d. A controlled organization³⁴ was established by statute or by action of the component reporting entity to support the mission of the component reporting entity, and a continuing relationship exists. Examples of continuing relationships include those in which the component reporting entity:
 - i. approves bylaws including any amendments;
 - ii. is represented on the governing board (for example, as an ex-officio member);
 - iii. appoints members of the governing board;
 - iv. coordinates and/or conveys input on strategic plans;
 - v. monitors organizational performance;
 - vi. approves budgets, operating plans, or contracts with others;

³¹ These indicators provide evidence that accountability was established or assigned to a component reporting entity. Meeting any one would typically mean accountability was established.

³² Such responsibilities may be assigned to a program office.

³³ These responsibilities are examples of actions or activities performed by the component reporting entity that are indicative of monitoring an ownership interest in an organization, which is an indicator of accountability.

³⁴ Where control exists at the government-wide level based on paragraphs 26-35.

- vii. establishes and executes cooperative agreements with the organization;
 - viii. administers federal grants to or contracts with the organization;
 - ix. testifies before Congress regarding organization performance and objectives;
or
 - x. has significant financial transactions or balances that indicate ongoing managerial involvement.
61. If more than one component reporting entity is assigned responsibilities as described above, the following guidance applies:
- a. Disclosure entities should be included in the GPFFR of each component reporting entity assigned such responsibilities.
 - b. Consolidation entities should be administratively assigned to only one component reporting entity.³⁵ The component reporting entity assigned the largest share³⁶ of responsibilities described in paragraph 60 generally should include the consolidation entity.
62. If a disclosure entity has not been administratively assigned to a consolidation entity, the disclosure entity should be reported by a component reporting entity (a) assigned responsibility for transferring funds to or receiving funds from the disclosure entity or (b) with which its mission most closely aligns.

MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE AND / OR MISLEADING TO INCLUDE

63. There may be instances where an organization is not administratively assigned to the component reporting entity based on the principles in paragraphs 59-62 yet the component reporting entity GPFFR would be misleading or incomplete if the organization were excluded. If so, such organizations should be included in the component reporting entity's GPFFR.³⁷
64. There may be instances where the principles in paragraphs 59-62 are met in form but not substance so that consolidation at the component reporting entity level would result in misleading presentation for the component reporting entity. While such conditions are expected to be rare, if it would be misleading to consolidate the organization in the component reporting entity GPFFR, the organization may be excluded so long as it is consolidated in another component reporting entity or directly in the government-wide reporting entity.
65. Determining whether it would be misleading to include a consolidation entity administratively assigned to a component reporting entity requires the application of

³⁵ Note that the component reporting entity to which a consolidation entity is administratively assigned may also be administratively assigned to a higher-level component reporting entity.

³⁶ Largest share as used here is based on the most significant administrative role.

³⁷ Although such situations would be rare, this Statement provides for situations that may arise.

professional judgment. Examples³⁸ of indicators that it may be misleading to include an organization are:

- a. The budget submission is combined prior to submission but is not jointly developed or executed, as indicated by:
 - i. the budget request not being directly approved by component reporting entity management, or
 - ii. the absence of significant involvement by component reporting entity management regarding budget execution, investments, or strategic planning.
- b. The component reporting entity provides little or no direct oversight of the organization.
- c. The organization's funding is separate from the component reporting entity's funding.
- d. The consolidated cost information would be misleading.
- e. The organization operates itself as a stand-alone organization (either since its inception or for a long history) has routinely prepared annual audited financial statements and has submitted financial data directly to the Department of the Treasury for the government-wide GPFFR.

GPFFR CONSOLIDATION AND DISCLOSURE

CONSOLIDATION ENTITIES

66. Consolidation entities' financial statements should be consolidated for the government as a whole to facilitate an assessment of the financial position³⁹ of the federal government and the cost of operations financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Component reporting entities should consolidate the financial information for all consolidation entities administratively assigned to them. Consolidation⁴⁰ aggregates the individual financial amounts of organizations that constitute a reporting entity and results in presentation of information for a single economic entity representing taxpayer-supported activities, resources, and obligations.

³⁸ The indicators listed in paragraph 65 a. – e. are examples and there may be other indicators not included on this list. Further, no specific number of indicators need be present to determine an organization would be misleading to include. This determination is based on the assessment as a whole after considering all facts and often requires professional judgment in making such decisions.

³⁹ The consolidated financial statements should include amounts and balances, consistent with applicable accounting standards, even if the amounts and balances arise from or are supported by different funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations).

⁴⁰ Consolidation is a method of accounting that combines the accounts of those entities line by line on a uniform basis of accounting and eliminates balances and transactions among the entities. For selected financial statements such as the statement of budgetary resources, a combined financial statement which does not eliminate balances and transactions among the entities is acceptable.

67. Consolidation entities as defined herein are considered federal reporting entities and should apply GAAP as defined in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*. This Statement does not establish new disclosure requirements regarding consolidation entities but acknowledges existing standards require disclosures.
68. SFFAS 34 recognizes that some federal reporting entities prepare and publish financial reports pursuant to the accounting and reporting standards issued by the FASB. SFFAS 34 provides that GPFFRs prepared in conformity with accounting standards issued by the FASB also may be regarded as in conformity with GAAP. Consolidation entities (that is, the consolidated government-wide reporting entity or a consolidated component reporting entity) may consolidate component or sub-component reporting entity financial statements prepared in accordance with SFFAS 34 without conversion for any differences in accounting policies among the organizations.

REPORTING ON DISCLOSURE ENTITIES

69. Maintaining a distinction between the finances of consolidation entities and disclosure entities will more effectively meet federal financial reporting objectives. Such a distinction allows for separate presentation of financial information for organizations where there is a difference in purpose, governance structure, and financial relationships. Disclosing financial and other information in the notes about disclosure entities rather than consolidating financial and other information about all organizations included in a GPFFR may better meet federal financial reporting objectives. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.
70. For those organizations classified as disclosure entities, the preparer should exercise judgment in determining the appropriate disclosures based on the factors and principles provided herein. Information regarding disclosure entities should be disclosed in accordance with Disclosure Requirements as detailed in paragraphs 72 to 75 below after considering the factors listed in paragraph 71.

Factors in Determining Disclosures

71. Materiality is an overarching consideration in financial reporting. Preparers should consider both qualitative and quantitative materiality in determining the information that should be presented regarding disclosure entities. Beyond materiality, the following factors⁴¹ should be considered in making judgments about the extent of appropriate disclosures:
- Relevance to reporting objectives**—Significance of the disclosure entity's information to meeting the reporting objectives established in SFFAC 1, *Objectives of*

⁴¹ The factors are presented in a list for consideration in the aggregate; no individual weights should be assigned or interpreted.

Federal Financial Reporting, with regard to the reporting entity. In particular, this would include the significance of the information regarding results of operations and financial position to meeting the operating performance and stewardship reporting objectives.

- b. **Nature and magnitude of the potential risks/exposures or benefits associated with the relationship**—Information is needed to provide an understanding of the potential operational or financial impact, including financial-related exposures to risk of loss and potential gain, to the consolidation entity resulting from the disclosure entity's operations.
- c. **Complexity of the relationship**—More complex relationships would involve additional detailed disclosures to ensure the relationship is understood by the readers.
- d. **Extent to which the information interests, or may be expected to interest, a wide audience**—There may be a wide interest in the information due to the sensitivity of the relationship, materiality of the transactions, media attention, or other reasons. Interested parties may expect more extensive information regarding the disclosure entity or its relationship with the federal government.
- e. **Extent to which there are no alternative sources of reliable information**—An objective of GPFFRs is to meet the needs of users who may have limited access to information or statements and lack the ability to demand the desired information.

Disclosure Requirements

- 72. In addition to the factors presented in paragraph 71 regarding the extent of disclosures, other qualitative and quantitative factors should be considered in determining whether information regarding a disclosure entity should be presented separately due to its significance or aggregated with the information regarding other disclosure entities. If information is aggregated, aggregation may be based on disclosure entity type, class, investment type, or a particular event deemed significant to the reporting entity.
- 73. Disclosures should be integrated so that concise, meaningful, and transparent information is provided. Integration is accomplished by providing a single comprehensive note regarding the disclosure entity or entities and related balances, or by incorporating references to relevant notes elsewhere in the GPFFR but relating to the disclosure entity or entities. For example, a reference may be made to a note regarding investments in the disclosure entity.
- 74. For each significant disclosure entity and aggregation of disclosure entities, information should be disclosed to meet the following objectives:⁴²
 - a. **Relationship and Organization**: The nature of the federal government's relationship with the disclosure entity or entities.

⁴² The objectives are not listed in any order of preference.

- b. **Relevant Activity:** Nature and magnitude of relevant activity during the period and balances at the end of the period.
- c. **Future exposures:** A description of financial and non-financial risks, potential benefits and, if possible, the amount of the federal government's exposure to gains and losses from the past or future operations of the disclosure entity or entities.

75. Examples of information that may meet the above objectives and provide the necessary understanding of the disclosure entity's relationship and organization, relevant activities, and future exposures specific to the federal government are provided below. The examples are provided to assist in determining the types of information that would meet the objectives in paragraph 74. No individual example is itself a required disclosure and the examples are not required in the aggregate. The examples are listed individually and should not be considered alternatives or substitutes for one another. The list of examples below is not exhaustive and additional items of information necessary to meet the objectives should be disclosed even if not specifically identified in the list below. Disclosures that meet the objectives in paragraph 74 should be provided. In determining what information is needed to meet the objectives in paragraph 74, the factors in paragraph 71, including the complexity, nature, and magnitude of the relationship, should be considered.

- a. The name and description of the disclosure entity,⁴³ including information about how its mission relates to federal policy objectives, actions taken on behalf of the federal government, its organization, and any significant involvements with outside parties.
- b. The nature of the relationship between the federal government and the disclosure entity including relevant information regarding:
 - i. How any control or influence over the disclosure entity is exercised;
 - ii. Key terms of contractual agreements, statutes, or other legal authorities; and
 - iii. The percentage of ownership interest and/or voting rights.
- c. For intervention actions, the primary reasons for the intervention and a brief description of the federal government's plan relative to monitoring, operating and/or disposing of the disclosure entity and/or a statement that the intervention is not expected to be permanent.
- d. A description and summary of assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, gains, and losses recognized in the financial statements of the reporting entity as a consequence of transactions with or interests in the disclosure entity and the basis for determining the amounts reported (or a reference to other disclosures where such information is provided).
- e. A discussion of the disclosure entity's key financial indicators and changes in key financial indicators.

⁴³ For simplicity, information is described in relation to a single disclosure entity. Nonetheless, the information may be presented for an aggregation of disclosure entities.

- f. Information regarding the availability of the disclosure entity's annual financial report and how it can be obtained.
 - g. In the event that contractual agreements, statutes, or other legal authorities obligate the reporting entity to provide financial support to the disclosure entity in the future, information regarding potential financial impacts (including those terms of the arrangements to provide financial support and liquidity, including events or circumstances that could expose the federal government to a loss).
 - h. The nature of, and changes in, the risks and benefits associated with the control of, or other involvement with, the organization during the period.
 - i. The amount that best represents the federal government's maximum exposure to gain or loss from its involvement with the disclosure entity, including how the maximum exposure to gain or loss is determined. (If this cannot be quantified, a narrative discussion could be offered.)
 - j. Other information that would provide an understanding of the potential financial impact, including financial-related exposures to risk of loss or potential gain to the reporting entity, resulting from the disclosure entity's operations including important existing, currently-known demands, risks, uncertainties, events, conditions, and trends—both favorable and unfavorable.
76. Any disclosure entity's financial information presented in the reporting entity's GPFFR should be based on accrual-basis standards provided in GAAP or an other comprehensive basis of accounting developed for its specific type of entity.⁴⁴ This includes GAAP for the relevant domain (FASAB, Governmental Accounting Standards Board, or FASB).
77. When information is derived from the disclosure entity's financial report, it is preferable but not mandatory that the report be for the same reporting period as the government-wide reporting entity. If a disclosure entity's reporting period differs from the government-wide reporting entity's and it is not cost-beneficial to align the reporting periods, any financial information disclosed from the disclosure entity's financial report should be for a reporting period ending within the government-wide reporting entity's reporting period.
78. Significant changes in information occurring from the end of the disclosure entity's reporting period should be reported consistent with the requirements of SFFAS 39, *Subsequent Events: Codification of Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards Contained in the American Institute of CPAs Statements on Auditing Standards*.

⁴⁴ Consolidation entities should apply the GAAP hierarchy established in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*.

MINIMUM DISCLOSURES REGARDING THE CENTRAL BANKING SYSTEM⁴⁵

79. The following information regarding the central banking system should be disclosed⁴⁶ in the government-wide GPFFR:
- a. Description of the central bank, including information about how its mission relates to federal policy objectives, actions taken on behalf of the federal government, its organization, and any significant involvements with outside parties.
 - b. The nature of the relationship between the federal government and the central bank including relevant information regarding governance structure with particular emphasis on matters affecting its independence and insulation from political influence.
 - c. A discussion of the significance and magnitude of financial actions reported during the year by the central banking system to achieve monetary and fiscal policy objectives.
 - d. A description and summary of assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, gains, and losses recognized in the financial statements of the reporting entity as a consequence of transactions with or interests in the central bank and the basis for determining the amounts reported (or a reference to other disclosures where such information is provided).
 - e. The amount that best represents the federal government's maximum exposure to gain or loss from its involvement with the central bank, including how the maximum exposure to gain or loss is determined (If this cannot be quantified, a narrative discussion could be offered.).
 - f. Information regarding the availability of the central bank's annual financial report and how it can be obtained.

RELATED PARTIES

80. In addition to organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable,⁴⁷ the federal government may have relationships with other parties. Only relationships of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about

⁴⁵ Central banking system functions are currently carried out by the Federal Reserve System (FRS). The FRS comprises the Board of Governors, the Federal Open Market Committee, the regional Federal Reserve Banks, and the Bureau of Consumer Financial Protection. The Bureau was established in 2010 as an independent bureau within the FRS pursuant to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act. The law provides that the Bureau's financial statements should not be consolidated with the financial statements of either the Board of Governors or the Federal Reserve System.

⁴⁶ Depending on the circumstances, some of the listed information may be disclosed due to other requirements. The resulting disclosures should be integrated so that concise, meaningful and transparent information is provided and information is not repetitive.

⁴⁷ Entities for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable are in the budget, majority owned, or controlled and would meet the inclusion principles and be reported as either a consolidation entity or disclosure entity and not be subject to related party reporting.

such relationships warrant disclosure.⁴⁸ Guidance is provided below but judgment will also be required to identify relationships that warrant disclosure as related parties.

81. Related parties: Organizations are considered to be related parties in the GPFFR if the existing relationship⁴⁹ or one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions.
82. Significant influence (for the purpose of this Statement) is the power to participate in the policy decisions of an entity, but not control those policies. Significant influence may be exercised in several ways, sometimes by representation on the board of directors or equivalent governing body but also by, for example, participation in the policy-making process, interchange of managerial personnel, or dependence on technical information. Significant influence may be gained by a minority ownership interest, statute, or agreement.
83. Significant influence does not arise from regulatory actions or economic dependency alone. However, regulation or economic dependency, together with other factors, may give rise to significant influence and therefore a related party relationship. Judgment is required in assessing the impact of regulation and economic dependence on a relationship.
84. Although component reporting entities of the federal government may significantly influence each other, component reporting entities are subject to the overall control of the federal government and operate together to achieve the policies of the federal government and are not considered related parties. Therefore, component reporting entities need not be disclosed as related parties by other component reporting entities.
85. Related parties *generally* would include (see paragraph 86 for organizations *generally* not included) but are not limited to:
 - a. **Government sponsored enterprises** not meeting the inclusion principles
 - b. Organizations governed by representatives from each of the governments that created the organization, including the United States, wherein the federal government has agreed to ongoing or contingent financial support to accomplish shared objectives (for example, certain multi-lateral development banks)
86. In the context of this Statement, the following generally would not be considered related parties:⁵⁰
 - a. Organizations meeting the inclusion principles
 - b. Organizations with which the federal government transacts a significant volume of business resulting in economic dependence such as government contractors, state and local governments, and not-for-profit organizations⁵¹

⁴⁸ Significance is assessed at the reporting entity and may differ among component reporting entities and the government-wide reporting entity.

⁴⁹ Relationship, as used in this context, refers to material transactions or events involving both parties.

⁵⁰ As described in paragraph 87 below, paragraphs 86a. – 86g. identify potential exclusions but judgment will be required to determine whether some pose risks that warrant disclosures.

- c. Organizations owned or managed by full-time employees of the federal government or members of their immediate families
 - d. Full-time employees of the federal government
 - e. Foreign governments
 - f. Organizations created through treaties or trade agreements that define common goals and means for joint action where the U.S. role in governing and financing the organizations is not significant
 - g. Special interest groups⁵²
87. Although paragraph 86 discusses the potential exclusion of certain organizations as related parties, other factors may create a need for related party disclosures for such organizations. The use of judgment will be necessary in identifying those factors consistent with the information needs described in paragraph 88.
88. Certain information regarding significant related party relationships may enable users to better understand the financial statements of the reporting entity because:
- a. related party relationships might expose the federal government to risks or provide opportunities that would not have existed in the absence of the relationship;
 - b. related party relationships can influence the way in which the federal government operates with other entities in achieving its individual objectives; and
 - c. related parties may enter into transactions that unrelated parties would not enter into, or may agree to transactions on different terms and conditions than those that would normally be available to unrelated parties.
89. For related party relationships of such significance to the reporting entity that it would be misleading to exclude information about such relationships, the following should be disclosed:
- a. Nature of the federal government's relationship with the party, including the name of the party or if aggregated, a description of the related parties. Such information also would include, as appropriate, the percentage of ownership interest.
 - b. Other information that would provide an understanding of the relationship and potential financial reporting impact, including financial-related exposures to risk of loss or potential gain to the reporting entity resulting from the relationship.

⁵¹ However, economic dependency, together with other factors, may give rise to significant influence and, therefore, a related party relationship.

⁵² Special interest groups refers broadly to organizations whose members share common concerns and try to influence government policies. Examples include but are not limited to labor unions, trade associations, religious organizations, membership organizations, and lobbying organizations.

EFFECT ON EXISTING CONCEPTS—AMENDMENTS TO SFFAC 2, *ENTITY AND DISPLAY*

90. This section establishes conforming amendments to the Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 2, *Entity and Display*, as described in the following paragraphs.

91. Paragraph 2 is replaced with the following paragraph which describes the amended purpose and contents of SFFAC 2.

The purpose of this statement is to establish concepts regarding what would be encompassed by a Federal Government entity's financial report. The statement specifies the types of entities for which there should be financial reports (hereinafter called "reporting entities"), establishes an organizational perspective for considering the makeup of each type of reporting entity, identifies types of financial reports for communicating the information for each type of reporting entity, suggests the types of information each type of report would convey, and identifies the process and factors the Board may consider in determining whether information should be basic information, required supplementary information (RSI), or other accompanying information (OAI).

92. Paragraphs 3 - 5 are rescinded because the preamble applicable to all concepts statements, which was adopted at the time SFFAC 5, *Definitions of Elements and Basic Recognition Criteria for Accrual-Basis Financial Statements* was issued, addresses the topics covered.

93. Paragraph 6a below is inserted following paragraph 6 to recognize the importance of accountability in determining organizations to be included in the reporting entity GPFFR:

6a. SFFAC 1 also discusses accountability and users' information needs as the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. Specifically, paragraphs 71-72 state "It may be said that 'accountability' and its corollary, 'decision usefulness,' comprise the two fundamental values of governmental accounting and financial reporting. They provide the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. ...The assertion of accountability therefore leads to identifying, first, those to whom government is accountable and, second, the information needed to maintain and demonstrate that accountability." Based on the concepts established in SFFAC 1, it is clear that accountability is a fundamental goal of financial reporting to be considered in establishing the boundaries of general purpose federal financial reports.

94. Paragraph 7 is rescinded because the preamble applicable to all concepts statements addresses the topics covered.

95. Paragraph 10, first bulleted item is amended by replacing it with the following bulleted item addressing an understanding of what the reporting entity entails:

- ensure each reporting entity includes information to support accountability by including all relevant organizations—those that are in the budget, owned by the Federal Government, or controlled by the Federal Government with risk of loss or expectation of benefit;

96. Paragraph 18, the last sentence is amended by changing ‘earmarked collections’ to ‘dedicated collections.’

97. Paragraph 29 is amended by adding the following footnote after the first sentence:

The Office of Management and Budget specifies the form and content of agency financial statements, pursuant to its authority under the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990, as amended (title 31, U.S. Code, section 3515(d)) through issuance of Bulletins and Circulars. OMB intends to base form and content on the concepts contained in this Statement. Any uncertainty as to what to consider as a reporting entity would be resolved by OMB in consultation with the appropriate Congressional committees.

98. Paragraph 38 is amended to exclude references to other paragraphs amended by this Statement. Paragraph 38 is replaced with the following:

The ultimate aggregation of organizations is into the Federal Government which, in reality, is the only independent economic entity. The Federal Government encompasses all of the resources and responsibilities existing within the component reporting entities. The aggregation includes organizations for which the Federal Government is accountable as well as other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the Federal Government are such that their exclusion would cause the Federal Government's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete.

99. Paragraphs 39 -50 are rescinded because the standards herein provide guidance on the same matters. It is not necessary or appropriate to retain the guidance in SFFAC 2.

100. The sub-heading before paragraph 51 - “Other Aspects Concerning Completeness of the Entity” - is revised to read “Other Aspects Concerning Completeness of the Component Reporting Entity.”

101. Paragraph 51 is replaced with the following:

Identifying the organizations to include in the reporting entity is one aspect of ensuring that the users of a reporting entity's financial reports are provided with all the information relevant to the reporting entity. However, because the only independent economic entity is the entire Federal Government, financial resources or free services are often provided from one component in the government to another component without a quid pro quo. For example, a portion of the retirement costs of Federal employees is reported by the Office of Personnel Management rather than the organizational entities employing the persons. Thus, within parameters more appropriately established in accounting standards, it is important to ensure that the reporting entity's financial reports include amounts that are attributable to the reporting entity's activities, even though they are recorded elsewhere. This is particularly important for costs associated with the use of human resources; personnel services are such a major part of most government activities. It is also important for the costs of services provided by other reporting entities, such as computer services provided by another unit.

102. Paragraphs 52 – 53 are rescinded because these paragraphs relate to issues covered in standards and are not necessary for understanding the notion of the reporting entity.

103. A new sub-heading “Need to Distinguish between Consolidation Entities and Disclosure Entities” is inserted at paragraph 53A.
104. Insert Paragraphs 53A – 53 E under the sub-heading: “Need to Distinguish between Consolidation Entities and Disclosure Entities” - The language provides a high level explanation of consolidation entities and disclosure entities. These are new terms introduced in this Statement critical to understanding the reporting entity concept in the federal government. More importantly, the language describes the need to distinguish them and the reason for this distinction in terms of financial statement presentation.

53A. The Federal Government is a large and complex organization. In order to fulfill public policy objectives, the Federal Government may use both consolidation entities (such as departments and agencies) and organizations that are distinct from consolidation entities to fulfill public policy objectives (such as financially independent organizations). These distinct organizations are referred to collectively as “disclosure entities.”

53B. Disclosure entities may maintain a separate legal identity, have a governance structure designed to insulate the organization from political influence, and/or be granted relative financial independence. Despite disclosure entities’ relative operational and financial independence, accountability for all organizations owned or controlled by the Federal Government rests with the Congress and/or the President. So, both consolidation entities and disclosure entities should be included in financial reports to provide accountability.

53C. It may be difficult to provide accountability, by meeting financial reporting objectives, through consolidated financial statements because they blur the distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities. Consolidated financial statements may obscure the fact that resources and resource allocation decisions for disclosure entities are more independent than similar decisions for consolidation entities. While consolidation entities are financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue and governed by elected officials, disclosure entities often do not rely on taxes and other non-exchange revenue for financing or elected officials for spending authority. For example, a single-column presentation of information for all organizations likely would create a risk of incorrect inferences. Such inferences may include the amount of assets and revenues available for consolidation entities to use in general government activities, and the extent to which taxpayers stand ready to liquidate liabilities and meet expenses of disclosure entities.

53D. Maintaining a distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities may more effectively meet federal financial reporting objectives. Such a distinction may be maintained through discrete presentation of information regarding disclosure entities. Nonetheless, disclosures are not a substitute for consolidation entities recognizing the financial effects of transactions with disclosure entities.

53E. Consolidated financial statements for only consolidation entities will facilitate an assessment of the financial position of the federal government and the cost of operations financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Consolidation aggregates the individual financial statements of organizations that constitute a reporting entity and results in presentation of information for a single economic entity representing consolidated activities supported by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, resources, and obligations. Consolidation entities are considered federal entities and should apply GAAP as defined in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*. The following sections discuss display of information in consolidation entity financial reports.

105. Paragraph 78 is rescinded because it is not conceptual guidance. It identifies an expectation that material differences between the recognition and measurement requirements under the FASB and the FASAB standards will be adjusted before consolidation.

EFFECTIVE DATE

106. This Statement is effective for periods beginning after September 30, 2017. Earlier implementation is not permitted.

The provisions of this Statement need not be applied to immaterial items.

APPENDIX A: BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS

This appendix discusses some factors considered significant by Board members in reaching the conclusions in this Statement. It includes the reasons for accepting certain approaches and rejecting others. Individual members gave greater weight to some factors than to others. The standards enunciated in this Statement—not the material in this appendix—should govern the accounting for specific transactions, events, or conditions.

Introduction

- A1. The federal government and its relationships with other organizations have become increasingly complex. These complex relationships make it difficult to identify federal entities for financial accountability purposes. In addition, some organizations may be viewed as “non-federal” and yet be owned or controlled by the federal government. Identifying the organizations to be included in the government-wide and component reporting entity general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs) is necessary to ensure the completeness of GPFFRs.
- A2. GPFFRs should include the varied organizations for which the Congress and/or the President are accountable regardless of their form. Therefore, the primary reason for developing standards for the government-wide and component reporting entity GPFFRs is to ensure that users will be provided with complete financial information about the federal government. While SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*, provides criteria for determining if an organization should be included, questions have continued in this area that resulted in the need for standards.

Project History /Task Force

- A3. In 2008, the Board formed a task force to support the project. The objective of the task force was “to assist in developing the proposed standards on the boundaries of the reporting entity and specific criteria for determining whether an organization should be included.”
- A4. The task force met several times over the course of the project and also exchanged numerous ideas and recommendations electronically. The task force views and recommendations were presented to the Board for its consideration during the development of these standards. The task force’s assistance was essential and its views carefully considered by members during deliberations. The task force played an important role in the research and survey work that led to the release of the *Reporting Entity Exposure Draft*. (See Appendix E for a list of task force members.)

Summary of Outreach Efforts

- A5. The Exposure Draft (ED), *Reporting Entity*, was issued on April 3, 2013 with comments requested by July 3, 2013.
- A6. Upon release of the ED, notices and press releases were provided to the FASAB email listserv, the Federal Register, the Journal of Accountancy, AGA Today, the CPA Journal, Government Executive, the CFO Council, the Council of the Inspectors General on Integrity and Efficiency, and the Financial Statement Audit Network, and committees of professional

associations generally commenting on exposure drafts in the past (for example, Greater Washington Society of CPAs, AGA Financial Management Standards Board).

- A7. This broad announcement was followed by direct mailings of the exposure draft to the following relevant congressional committees:
- a) Senate Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs
 - b) Senate Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs
 - c) Senate Committee on Rules and Administration
 - d) House Committee on Science, Space, and Technology
 - e) House Committee on Oversight and Government Reform
 - f) House Committee on Financial Services
- A8. Additional types of relevant organizations were contacted with direct mailings such as museums and performing art organizations, organizations that apply FASB GAAP, and intelligence agency organizations.
- A9. Thirty-nine responses were received from preparers, auditors, professional associations, and citizens. In addition, over ten participants provided testimony on the issues surrounding the project to the Board at a public hearing.
- A10. The Board did not rely on the number in favor of or opposed to a given position. Information about the respondents' majority view is provided only as a means of summarizing the comments. The Board considered the arguments in each response, as well as the testimony provided at the public hearing, and weighed the merits of the points raised. Due to the complexity of the standard and the issues raised, it was deemed most efficient and appropriate to include the summary of the issues raised by respondents and disposition in the narrative relating to the Board's deliberation of the issue.

Organizational Approach to Defining Boundaries

Underlying Concepts

- A11. The federal government is complex and therefore defining the boundary of GPFFRs may be difficult. Its constitutionally established powers and often its motivations and functions are different from other organizations. Despite these complexities, difficulties, and differences, accountability is a fundamental goal of financial reporting. As noted in SFFAC 1:

The federal government derives its just powers from the consent of the governed. It therefore has a special responsibility to report on its actions and the results of those actions. These reports must accurately reflect the distinctive nature of the federal government and must provide information useful to the citizens, their elected representatives, federal executives, and program managers. Providing this information to the public, the news media, and elected officials is an essential part of accountability in government.⁵³

- A12. SFFAC 1 discusses accountability and users' information needs as the foundation of governmental financial reporting. Specifically, paragraphs 71 and 72 state "It may be said

⁵³ SFFAC 1, paragraph 8.

that ‘accountability’ and its corollary, ‘decision usefulness,’ comprise the two fundamental values of governmental accounting and financial reporting. They provide the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. ...The assertion of accountability therefore leads to identifying, first, those to whom government is accountable and, second, the information needed to maintain and demonstrate that accountability.”

A13. SFFAC 1 explains that the federal government has a special responsibility to report on its actions and the results of those actions. SFFAC 1 discusses the information needs of both internal and external users including the citizens, their elected representatives, federal executives, and program managers because meeting user information needs is an essential part of accountability in government.

A14. An organizationally based approach to defining boundaries supports accountability to all users but particularly to external users who may be unaware of the nature of organizational relationships. Focusing on organizations helps to identify who is accountable and for what. In addition, an organizational approach provides meaningful financial statements by aligning boundaries with defined organizations for which there would likely be users of GPFFRs.⁵⁴

Identifying and Classifying Organizations

A15. The Board considered several alternative approaches to identifying organizations for which elected officials—the Congress and/or the President—are accountable. This Statement provides that reporting entities should first identify what organizations⁵⁵ are to be included⁵⁶ in the reports. The three principles for including organizations in the government-wide GPFFR are: In the Budget, Majority Ownership Interest, and Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit. This Statement also includes a provision requiring inclusion of an organization if it would be misleading to exclude it.

A16. Next, for those organizations to be included, a distinction is made between consolidation entities and disclosure entities. This distinction determines how financial information is to be presented in the GPFFR. Consolidation entity financial information is to be presented in consolidated financial statements and related notes. Disclosure entity financial information is to be disclosed in notes to the financial statements.

A17. Professional judgment is required in the application of the standards in this Statement. This Statement presents a principles-based approach to determining which organizations should be included⁵⁷ in the government-wide GPFFR because of the wide and varying relationships of the federal government. General purpose federal financial reports for the government-wide reporting entity should be broad enough to report the Congress’ and the President’s accountability for organizations. This ensures that the financial reports contain all the information essential for fair presentation of the government’s financial position and results of operations.

⁵⁴ See SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-38, for a discussion of the organizational approach.

⁵⁵ “Organization” refers to the organization in its entirety including all funding sources (for example, appropriations or donations) for which the entity is accountable. It is used broadly and may include among others departments, agencies, bureaus, divisions, commissions, corporations, and components. .

⁵⁶ “Included” means an organization’s information is either consolidated or disclosed.

⁵⁷ Note that this Statement does not specify which organizations must prepare and issue financial statements.

- A18. One controversial matter addressed in this Statement was the inclusion of organizations where the ownership or control is intended to be temporary; such as receiverships, conservatorships, and entities owned or controlled due to intervention actions. The Board considered many options in developing the exposure draft and concluded that preparers and auditors would find it difficult to apply the notion of “temporary” absent clear guidance in the standards. In some circumstances, temporary relationships evolve into permanent relationships. Also, some federal government components are subject to sunset provisions and are also temporary. Because it was unlikely the Board could anticipate the full range of circumstances preparers and auditors may face, the Board proposed in the exposure draft that the same principles be applied to all organizations.
- A19. A few respondents asked the Board to provide that relationships intended to be temporary be excluded but most agreed with the proposal. Some respondents also asked that the Board explain how the temporary status of the relationship should be considered in applying the principles. The Board revised the proposal to explicitly state that whether relationships are temporary or permanent should not be considered in determining whether an organization is included in the GPFFR. Instead, the revised standards explain that whether a relationship is temporary or permanent is likely to influence whether the entity exhibits the characteristics established for a consolidation entity or for a disclosure entity. The standards also acknowledge that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities would generally be disclosure entities but that these assessments should be reviewed each fiscal year to determine if the classification should change.
- A20. Members discussed the potential that inclusion of such entities in GPFFRs might lead users to conclude that entities receiving temporary federal government financial assistance have become part of the federal government. The summary alerts readers that the “principles herein are not intended to establish whether an organization is or should be considered a federal agency for legal or political purposes.” The Board recognizes that its responsibility is to ensure GPFFRs meet federal financial reporting objectives and that is the focus of this Statement. By avoiding subjective provisions such as “temporary” and instead establishing principles that can be applied to all relationships, this Statement supports meeting federal financial reporting objectives.

Principles for Inclusion in the Government-wide GPFFR

In the Budget

- A21. Identification of an organization in the President’s Budget is the clearest evidence that an organization should be included in the government-wide report. Absent budgetary actions – originating with the President’s Budget and leading to appropriations – federal organizations would be unable to conduct operations. Financial reporting objectives – budgetary integrity, operating performance, stewardship, and systems and controls – could not be met if organizations identified in the budget were not included in the financial reports. Therefore, the most efficient means to identify organizations for inclusion in the GPFFR is by their participation in the budget process as evidenced by being listed in the schedule of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information.

Application to Legislative and Judicial Branches

A22. Although the legislative and judicial branches (and most organizations within those branches) may not be required to prepare financial statements, based on the ‘*In the Budget*’ principle, those organizations would be reported upon in the government-wide report. FASAB GAAP would be the appropriate accounting standards for those entities within the judicial and legislative branches that prepare GAAP-based financial statements. While this Statement does not require any entity to prepare and issue a GPPFR, it does enable federal reporting entities preparing and issuing GPPFRs in conformance with GAAP as defined by SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*, to determine what organizations should be included in GPPFRs.

Organizations Receiving Federal Financial Assistance

A23. The schedule of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information also sometimes identifies specific recipients of federal financial assistance. SFFAC 2 (prior to the amendments set forth in this Statement) acknowledged that the schedule sometimes names an organization to receive a “subsidy” and stated “This does not mean, however, that an appropriation that finances a subsidy to a non-Federal entity would, by itself, require the recipient to be included in the financial statements of the organization or program that expends the appropriation.” Thus, “subsidy” is the term used in SFFAC 2 (before amendments set forth in this Statement) to distinguish such “non-federal” organizations from the organizations intended to be included in the GPPFR.

A24. While the provision in SFFAC 2 was correct, this Statement establishes standards and terms used in standards should be defined. The Board considered ways to define “subsidy” but concluded it was more appropriate to rely on the existing definition of “federal financial assistance.”

A25. As exposed, the proposed language attempted to ensure organizations that receive federal financial assistance⁵⁸ as defined by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 but listed under an appropriation in the schedule of the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information are not automatically included in the GPPFR. Most grants are provided through programs and the recipient organizations are not necessarily listed in the budget. However, in some cases an organization is listed. The Board believes a means to confirm whether specifically identified recipient organizations are “non-federal organizations receiving federal financial assistance” is needed. When such organizations are listed in the budget, they

⁵⁸ This Statement adopts the definition of “federal financial assistance” established in the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996. However, an organization need not be subject to the requirements of the Single Audit Act in order to qualify as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. As defined by the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, federal financial assistance is assistance that non-federal entities receive or administer in the form of grants, loans, loan guarantees, property, cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, food commodities, direct appropriations, or other assistance. For the purposes of these standards, federally-authorized support fees and other charges would be considered other assistance even if legislation granting authority to collect them indicates that the fees or other charges are not considered public monies of the United States.

should be assessed against the “majority ownership interest” and “control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit” principles before being excluded from the government-wide GPFFR.

A26. Although few organizations are listed in the budget as receiving subsidies, respondents questioned (1) whether such organizations had to be subject to the requirements of the Single Audit Act to be considered, (2) whether federally authorized “support fees” would meet the definition of assistance, and (3) whether listing within the budget should be an inclusion principle given this practice. Because of these questions, the wording was clarified to provide that such non-federal organizations would be state, local, or territorial governments (or components thereof) or not-for profit organizations. In addition, the footnotes clarify that the exclusion is not limited to organizations subject to the Single Audit Act or to specific forms of financial assistance. Lastly, if an organization listed in the budget is to be excluded it is because it is neither owned nor controlled as defined in these standards.

Organizations Partially in the Budget

A27. The Board deliberated the issue of certain organizations being partially in the budget (for example, some of their operations or accounts are not in the President’s Budget), such as a museum receiving substantial donor support. The Board determined organizations should be included in the government-wide GPFFR based on the “in the budget” principle. The Board further decided that such organizations should be presented in the same manner as other consolidation entities or disclosure entities, as discussed later in this Statement. Therefore, the language in the principle (“in the budget”) does not provide separate and distinct guidance for organizations partially funded by non-budgetary sources. This means the organization is either a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity and should be reported as one or the other, in its entirety.

A28. Certain respondents expressed concern because donated funds are for specific purposes and are not available for general government use. They believed full consolidation may be misleading. However, entities receiving donations administer and are accountable for both appropriations and donated funds. Presently, the financial statements for museums receiving donations display consolidated totals along with separate columns for federal and donor funds. This presentation provides accountability for all funds under the entity’s management while alerting the reader to restrictions. Similar presentation at the government-wide level may be accomplished by presenting donated funds as dedicated collections to the extent they meet this definition. For example, such reporting would reveal that donor funds are unavailable for general use by the government.

Need for Additional Principles

A29. While the principle “in the budget” is the most efficient means to identify organizations for inclusion, there are additional principles to be considered to identify other organizations that should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. The budget principle represents a starting point in analysis but accountability goals could not be met solely through that principle. Because the budget’s purposes differ from financial reporting objectives in many respects (such as the focus on the allocation of budgetary resource flows versus costs of operations), it is possible that organizations or activities might be excluded from the budget for reasons that do not justify exclusion from financial reports. For example, some

organizations may be established to operate in a manner similar to businesses and are excluded from the budgetary process. Therefore, additional inclusion principles are necessary to ensure completeness in the context of the federal financial reporting objectives.

Majority Ownership Interest

A30. Ownership interests typically provide owners access to resources and exposure to risks while supporting their desired goals. Federal financial reporting objectives require that information about service efforts, costs, and accomplishments be made available. To ensure such information is included, when the federal government holds a majority ownership in an organization, the organization should be included in the GPFFR. As described in this Statement, majority ownership interest exists with over 50 percent of the voting rights or the net residual assets of an organization.

A31. The Board noted that some may question how to account for minority ownership interests (less than 50 percent). The Board agreed addressing minority interests through the project is likely to be less effective than allowing the GAAP hierarchy to fill any void. To address the potential question, the Board included within this Statement a footnote stating ownership interests 50 percent or less should be accounted for in accordance with the appropriate accounting standards per the GAAP hierarchy.

Control with Risk of Loss or Expectation of Benefit

A32. When the federal government controls an organization with risk of loss or expectation of benefit, the organization should be included in the government-wide GPFFR to provide accountability. As detailed in this Statement, control involves the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits or be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations as a result of those actions. Both the power and the risk of loss or expectation of benefit aspects of the control definition should be present to justify inclusion of the organization in the GPFFR.

A33. For example, this Statement provides for situations where the risk of loss or expectation of benefit does not exist—in the instance of the federal government exercising regulatory powers over an organization. In these cases, the federal government is unable to exercise that power for its own benefit and rarely explicitly assumes risk of loss. Therefore, including such an organization in the GPFFR would misrepresent the financial position and results of operation of the government. This would not support achievement of the objectives of financial reporting.

A34. For financial reporting purposes, assessment of control is made at the reporting date and based on current legislation, rather than legislation that may or may not be enacted in the future.

A35. Determining control requires judgment, and this Statement provides indicators to assist in making determinations. The first set of indicators is “persuasive” as the federal government has the authority to control and any one of the listed items would generally mean control is present. The second set of indicators requires more judgment because the set of indicators is considered in the aggregate to assess whether the federal government has the ability to control the organization.

A36. Because the federal government does not usually seek only financial benefits, the expected benefit associated with control does not have to be a financial benefit. Instead, it may be non-financial. For example, it may be in the form of a service provided on the federal government's behalf or the ability to direct the work of the other organization to deliver goods and services.

Misleading to Exclude

A37. This Statement includes a general provision requiring inclusion of an organization if it would be misleading to exclude it. In developing the proposal, some Board members and respondents to the proposal believed this may be problematic because no criteria are offered. However, the Board ultimately agreed the general provision could accommodate unique situations that may arise in the future. This is consistent with provisions of SFFAC 2 and the Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement 14, *The Financial Reporting Entity*.

A38. Requiring inclusion of an organization that would be misleading to exclude allows for judgment in unique situations not anticipated when the standards were developed. If it were feasible to anticipate such situations and develop criteria, then there would be no need for the misleading to exclude provision. While there are concerns regarding possible unanticipated consequences, the Board believes the provision will be of benefit during the implementation period. If adjustments are needed, agencies may seek amendments to the standards or additional guidance as appropriate. Further, the Board also may consider whether the provision is necessary after implementation.

Reporting on Organizations—Consolidation or Disclosure

A39. Differences in purposes and governance structures by organizations may require different presentation of related financial information. This Statement provides that the reporting entity should first determine which organizations are to be included in its GPFFRs. Next the reporting entity should classify each included organization as a consolidation entity or a disclosure entity. Different means of presenting relevant information are provided for consolidation entities and disclosure entities. Consolidation entities⁵⁹ should apply the hierarchy of GAAP established for “federal reporting entities” in Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) 34. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

A40. The distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities is based on the degree to which the following characteristics are met: the organization is financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, is governed by the Congress and/or the President, imposes or may impose risks and rewards to the federal government, and/or provides goods and services on a non-market basis. Maintaining a distinction between consolidation entities where financial and operational decisions are more directly governed by the Congress and/or the President, and disclosure entities that are more financially (or operationally)

⁵⁹ Consolidated financial statements provided for “consolidation entities” will include all disclosures and required supplementary information required by existing standards. Existing standards will ensure that adequate information is provided regarding the nature and organizational structure of consolidation entities as well as the activities and future exposures.

independent will provide information to users that is more understandable and relevant. In some cases, disclosure of information regarding an individual organization is more useful than consolidation of the individual organization's financial statements in the government-wide financial statements. In other instances, consolidation of individual organizations' financial statements is needed to provide fair presentation of activities financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, and/or relying on the taxpayers to settle liabilities.

- A41. While principle-based standards do not explicitly classify specific organizations as consolidation entities or disclosure entities, the Board considered the need to illustrate how the inclusion principles and the criteria for classification as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity might be applied to certain significant individual organizations or classes of organizations. For many classes of organizations, illustrations are provided in Appendix C. With respect to certain significant organizations with particularly unique characteristics, such as the central banking system (Federal Reserve System (FRS)),⁶⁰ a majority of the Board did not believe illustrations would be appropriate because the illustrations might become de facto requirements regarding that entity's classification.
- A42. The role of preparers and auditors is to assess each organization against the principles in paragraphs 22 – 55 and reach their own conclusions. In contrast, the role of standards-setters is to set accounting standards and consider the potential implications. In doing so, the Board acknowledges some members believe the Board should explicitly address inclusion and classification (as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity) of the FRS in GPFFRs because of the magnitude of its operations. While different individuals could reach different conclusions due to the unique and changing role of the central banking system, most members believe explicitly classifying the FRS, or any entity, at a point in time would be inappropriate and result in this Statement becoming outdated as circumstances change.
- A43. Despite the decision not to explicitly classify the FRS, the Board considered each possible classification of the FRS. This consideration did not take into account all the facts and circumstances that would be considered by the preparer and auditor. Instead, like the illustrations in Appendix C, high-level facts were considered in sufficient detail to provide reasonable assurance to the Board that preparers and auditors would consider the appropriate matters in making decisions. The majority of the Board believes the principles are sufficient to aid preparers and auditors in assessing any organization, including the FRS, and in making decisions regarding inclusion and classification as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity.
- A44. If the assessment of the FRS resulted in its classification as a consolidation entity, the government-wide consolidated financial statements and related notes would present information as if the FRS and other consolidation entities operate together as a single economic entity. Any balances and transactions among the consolidation entities would be eliminated. For example, all Treasury securities held as investments by the FRS and

⁶⁰ The FRS comprises the Board of Governors, the Federal Open Market Committee, the regional Federal Reserve Banks, and the Bureau of Consumer Financial Protection. The Bureau was established in 2010 as an independent bureau within the FRS pursuant to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act. The law provides that the Bureau's financial statements should not be consolidated with the financial statements of either the Board of Governors or the Federal Reserve System. (The Bureau has been consolidated directly in the government-wide report to date.) For simplicity, the basis for conclusions discusses the system as a whole rather than its individual components.

reported as liabilities by the Department of the Treasury would be eliminated. Significant additions to the government-wide balance sheet as a result of consolidating the FRS would be liabilities for deposits of depository institutions and Federal Reserve notes outstanding as well as assets for investments in non-federal organizations. Consolidation would also affect the reported operating results of the government; interest expense would be reduced by the amount paid by the U.S. Treasury to the FRS and revenue would be reduced by the amount paid by the FRS to the U.S. Treasury.

A45. If the assessment of the FRS resulted in its classification as a disclosure entity, disclosures regarding the FRS would aid users in understanding the FRS, its relationship with the federal government, any significant activities, and any risks posed to the federal government. Such disclosures would allow the reader to consider monetary policy and fiscal policy as distinct activities. The government-wide consolidated financial statements would present the results of fiscal policy. Consolidation of fiscal and monetary policy financial information, as described above, would result in elimination of some Treasury securities. Thus, the use of Treasury securities to conduct monetary policy and their elimination upon consolidation could obscure the Treasury securities (debt) that result from the fiscal policies of the federal government. Further, liabilities for Federal Reserve notes outstanding and deposits by depository institutions differ in character from liabilities arising from fiscal policy. In contrast, disclosures may provide an understanding of the relationship between monetary and fiscal policy and support consideration of these distinct activities.

A46. The Board recognizes the FRS performs a unique federal function—central banking—and there is only one organization of this type. The FRS is unique not only in its mission, but also in its governance, structure, activities, and the need to maintain independence. Its responsibilities are broad reaching and of great interest because of the impact of monetary policy on the country. The magnitude of its role and transactions led the Board to require certain minimum disclosures about the FRS. The minimum disclosures recognize that there is special interest in the activity of the central banking system. The minimum disclosures for the government-wide report are in addition to any other reporting requirements at the government-wide or component reporting entity levels. The minimum disclosures focus on governance, significant roles and responsibilities, the significance and magnitude of financial actions reported by the FRS to achieve monetary and fiscal policy objectives, transactions with the reporting entity, risks to the federal government, and future exposures to gains and losses. The disclosures should be integrated and, depending on the circumstances, also may be required by other provisions in this Statement or other GAAP requirements.

Consolidation entities

A47. Consolidation entities generally provide goods and services on a non-market basis. That is, prices are not established solely through market transactions where supply and demand determine price. Goods and services provided on a non-market basis may be free of charge or provided at prices that are either not economically significant or bear little relationship to the cost of the goods or services.

A48. Consolidation entities generally are financed through taxes and other non-exchange revenue as evidenced by inclusion in the budget. Significant risks and rewards fall to the federal government for consolidation entities. Inclusion in the budget is the clearest

evidence an organization is relying on taxes and other non-exchange revenue and that elected officials are key decision makers.

A49. The budget is a political document serving many purposes. The 1967 *Report of the President's Commission on Budget Concepts* indicates that “the budget must serve simultaneously as an aid in decisions about both the efficient allocation of resources among competing claims and economic stabilization and growth.” On the topic of coverage of the budget, the Commission recommended that “the budget should, as a general rule, be comprehensive of the full range of Federal activities.” Because the budget includes “federal activities,” entities listed in the budget, except those receiving federal financial assistance, generally qualify as consolidation entities.

A50. The assessment of whether an organization meets the attributes for a consolidation entity is based on the assessment of all the attributes and the degree to which each is met. As such, not all attributes are required to be met; classification is based on the assessment as a whole.

Disclosure entities

A51. Disclosure entities receive limited or no funding from general tax revenues. Disclosure entities, in contrast to consolidation entities, are often structured so there is a clear barrier or limit on taxpayer financing of the entity. Disclosure entities have relative financial independence and often provide goods and services on a market basis. This may be an effort to shield the federal government from risk.

A52. Another contrast with consolidation entities is that with disclosure entities, the Congress and/or the President have much less direct involvement in decision-making. Decision-making may rest with a governing board insulated from political influence and there may be situations where disclosure entities have a separate legal identity. In some cases, the relationship with the federal government is not expected to be permanent.

A53. It is important to recognize the continuum that exists among disclosure entities. For example, despite a greater degree of autonomy, some disclosure entities may still exercise powers that are reserved to the federal government as sovereign. Other disclosure entities may not themselves carry out missions of the federal government but, instead, are owned or controlled by the federal government as a result of regulatory or intervention actions.

A54. This Statement provides categories of disclosure entities primarily as a way to help identify disclosure entities. However, this Statement does not require presentation by any specific class or category and allows flexibility in presenting information about disclosure entities. The categories of potential disclosure entities include quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities, receiverships and conservatorships, and federal government intervention actions.

Quasi-Governmental and/or Financially Independent Entities

A55. This Statement describes quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities as those entities where governance and/or financial differences lead to greater independence. This Statement identifies both governance and financial characteristics that would be found in this type of entity.

A56. Quasi-governmental and/or financially independent entities may include certain Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDCs), museums, performing arts organizations and universities, and venture capital funds. Because details may differ among organizations in each example type, an objective assessment may classify some individual organizations as consolidation entities rather than disclosure entities. Appendix C-Illustrations offers examples that may be useful in application.

Receiverships and Conservatorships

A57. This Statement describes receiverships and conservatorships as those failed financial institutions and banks the federal government takes control or ownership of with no goal to maintain the relationship. Absent a decision to make control permanent, such controlled or owned organizations generally would be disclosure entities.

Federal Government Intervention Actions

A58. This Statement describes federal government intervention actions as resulting from exceptional circumstances where the involvements are not expected to be permanent. SFFAC 1 acknowledges the unique nature of federal government activity and its broad responsibilities. Paragraph 50 explains “The federal government is unique, when compared with any other entity in the country, because it is the vehicle through which the citizens of the United States exercise their sovereign power. The federal government has the power through law, regulation, and taxation to exercise ultimate control over many facets of the national economy and society...” SFFAC 1 describes the federal government’s responsibility for the general welfare of the nation in paragraph 53-54 as “a broad responsibility that involves multiple goals.”

A59. With these broad responsibilities, the federal government may decide to take certain actions or intervene in certain situations. Examples may include actions to provide stability to the financial markets, key industries, states, cities, or counties. These types of federal government interventions are considered rare.⁶¹ Historically the federal government has been involved in few commercial enterprises on an equity basis or shared ownership basis.⁶² Although the federal government may not act to maximize profits, the federal government may intervene and act in capacities to protect citizens. This may ultimately lead to taking control of organizations or acquiring some form of ownership.

A60. The federal government may also intervene by providing assistance through extending loans or debt guarantees that do not meet the inclusion principles established in this Statement. Such transactions should be accounted for in accordance with the appropriate accounting standards per the GAAP hierarchy. This Statement does not require additional disclosures for intervention actions that do not meet the inclusion principles.

A61. The initial SFFAC 2 provided an exception for situations where the criteria leading to consolidation are met temporarily. Specifically, paragraph 45 of SFFAC 2 stated “The entity or any of the above criteria are likely to remain in existence for a time, i.e., the interest in the entity and its governmental characteristics are more than fleeting.” “Fleeting” may imply

⁶¹ The financial crisis that began in 2007 is considered to be the most severe since the Great Depression. (White Paper on Changes to Financial Regulations)

⁶² Congressional Research Service (CRS) Report for Congress RL30533, *The Quasi Government: Hybrid Organizations with Both Government and Private Sector Legal Characteristics*

periods of one year or less to some and the Board considered how to clarify the term “fleeting.” Ultimately, the Board decided terms such as “fleeting” and “temporary” imply a time limit.

A62. However, there may be instances where an intervention is longer than one year due to the extreme factors of the national crisis. In most instances, it is difficult to establish and meet a timeline for ending an intervention. In these instances, the focus continues to be on governance and protection, rather than maximizing profits or establishing new federal government lines of business. Although the actions may be longer than one year, the interventions are “not expected to be permanent.” The Board notes that this “non-permanent” expectation would generally lead to the entities exhibiting more of the characteristics of a disclosure entity than of a consolidation entity. This is preferable to relying on “temporary” or “fleeting” which implies that a time limit could be established.

A63. A further implication the Board wishes to avoid is that organizations owned or controlled as a result of interventions are considered “federal government entities” when applying professional standards established by the American Institute of CPAs.⁶³ This Statement recognizes that such interventions create a need for accountability but they do not make the disclosure entities arising from intervention actions “federal government entities” or federal reporting entities. While the hierarchy of GAAP established for federal reporting entities may not necessarily apply to disclosure entities; information about such organizations is still needed for accountability purposes and to meet federal financial reporting objectives.

Component Reporting Entities

A64. The Board believes there should be consistency in treatment of organizations at the government-wide and the component reporting entity levels. The reasons for including organizations at the component reporting entity level should be consistent with the reasons in the government-wide entity GPFFR. Further, classification as consolidation entities or disclosure entities should be consistent in government-wide and component reporting entity GPFFRs. The Board believes a single set of principles for inclusion and classification presented from the government-wide perspective provides for the desired consistency. This is appropriate and necessary because the government-wide reporting entity is the only federal reporting entity that is an independent economic entity.

A65. Nonetheless, implementation of these principles involves the component reporting entities because the government-wide report is, for the most part, a consolidation of the reports provided by component reporting entities. Therefore, component reporting entities must identify and include in their GPFFRs all consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity GPFFRs and government-wide GPFFR are complete.

A66. The Board believes that component reporting entities should identify consolidation entities and disclosure entities administratively assigned to the component reporting entity. Standards that are based on organization and accountability provide a more realistic view of

⁶³ The American Institute of CPAs establishes ethics rules for its members through its Code of Professional Conduct. Rule 203, Accounting Principles, designates three bodies to establish accounting principles for three different domains—nongovernmental entities, state and local governmental entities, and “federal government entities.” (ET Section 203, paragraph .01)

how component reporting entities become accountable for organizations and how component entity boundaries are likely to be determined. The result will be component reporting entity GPFFRs that include all organizations for which the component reporting entity management (for example, appointed officials) are expected to be accountable.

A67. Administrative assignments to component entities are typically made in policy documents such as laws, budget documents, regulations, or strategic plans. Ultimately, component reporting entities would identify and include in their GPFFRs all consolidation entities and disclosure entities for which they are accountable so that both the component reporting entity and government-wide GPFFRs are complete.

A68. Administrative assignments can be identified by evaluating the following three areas:

- a. Scope of the Budget Process
- b. Accountability Established Within a Component Entity
- c. Misleading to Exclude and/or Misleading to Include

A69. Component reporting entities should develop processes to ensure they identify and include those consolidation entities and disclosure entities that are: (1) within the scope of their budget process, (2) for which accountability is established within their component reporting entity, or (3) which are misleading to exclude. In rare cases, a component reporting entity may find that it would be misleading to include a consolidation entity that appears to be within the scope of their budget process or to have accountability established within the component reporting entity. While most respondents agreed with the proposal, several indicated a need for implementation guidance, especially regarding the misleading to include provision. In addition, there was some confusion about how the inclusion principles applied from the government-wide perspective relate to the administrative assignments at the component reporting entity level.

A70. The Board does not intend to provide detailed administrative assignment implementation guidance at this time. Central agencies are anticipated to determine if there is a need for coordinated guidance to be developed to ensure government-wide consistency. A coordinated effort from the central agencies could promote a process to ensure the component reporting entities are performing the necessary procedures to capture the material organizations from their perspectives and also for consideration at the government-wide level. The effective date considered this and allowed sufficient time for a coordination of efforts as well as development of any needed implementation guidance.

A71. Regarding the “misleading to include provisions,” the Board made editorial changes to clarify that they expect this to occur only in rare cases where the substance of relationships between consolidation entities differs from their form. For example, the Pension Benefit Guarantee Corporation (PBGC) is legally established within the Department of Labor. Nonetheless, PBGC has always operated as a separate legal entity with a mandate to fund its operations from premiums and has provided separate audited financial statements since its inception. Some believe that it would be misleading to consolidate PBGC and Department of Labor financial statements. In contrast, the misleading to include provision would not be an appropriate justification for excluding an office such as the Office of the Inspector General from the consolidated financial statements of its associated Department.

A72. Also, some respondents questioned whether the misleading to include provision would be applicable to disclosure entities. The Board does not believe disclosure entities can be misleading to include because disclosures explain the relationship. Such explanations would prevent misleading presentations about disclosure entities.

A73. During due process, some respondents questioned the difference between the inclusion principles and administrative assignments. The inclusion principles are to be applied from a government-wide perspective; whereas administrative assignments are determined from the component reporting entity perspective. Prior to implementation of this Statement, based on initial provisions of SFFAC 2, component reporting entities apply the conclusive and indicative criteria from their perspective as individual government agencies. In some cases, no individual government agency has direct involvement in the operations of entities that nonetheless are controlled through legislation established by and/or officials appointed by elected officials. Also, some ownership documents identify the federal government as owner rather than a particular government agency. To ensure that all owned or controlled entities are included, the inclusion principles must consider the relationship of an organization and the federal government as a whole.

A74. Another key difference is that administrative assignments are assessed from the component reporting entity perspective. Therefore, component reporting entities will need to adapt to a multi-step process involving varying perspectives (inclusion principles applied from a government-wide perspective and administrative assignments from the departmental perspective). Accordingly, coordination with the central agencies during the implementation process will be important.

GPFFR Consolidation and Disclosure

A75. As noted above, decisions about the government-wide GPFFR require determining what organizations are to be included in the reports and identifying appropriate means to present relevant information about organizations. The final determination of the presentation of financial information through consolidation or disclosure is based upon the results of two assessments—first, if the organization is included and second, if those included organizations are classified as consolidation entities or disclosure entities.

A76. The Flowchart at Appendix B is a useful tool in applying the principles established. It is helpful in the assessment and applying the standards in order. It includes paragraph references to underlying principles and major decision points.

Consolidation Entities

A77. This Statement provides that consolidation entities should apply SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*. In addition, it provides for the consolidation of the financial statements of consolidation entities so citizens may assess the financial position and the cost of operations of the federal government. Consolidation of financial information regarding the activities financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, resources, and obligations where governance rests with the Congress and/or the President ensures that the reporting objectives of SFFAC 1 are met.

A78. Existing guidance may also require additional information—either through disclosures or required supplementary information—regarding consolidation entities. While the term “disclosure entities” is used to refer to organizations included in GPFFRs through disclosures, readers should not infer that disclosures would not also be provided regarding consolidation entities and related activities and transactions consistent with existing standards.

Consolidation of FASB-based and FASAB-based Information

A79. While FASAB is the appropriate source of GAAP for federal entities, the Board has considered the potential ramifications when some federal entities follow GAAP for nongovernmental entities promulgated by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (hereafter “FASB GAAP”) and their information is consolidated with information based on FASAB standards. For example, federal government corporations, the U.S. Postal Service, certain component reporting entities of the U.S. Department of the Treasury and the Department of Housing and Urban Development, and some other organizations in the executive and legislative branches have historically applied FASB GAAP and continue to do so. SFFAS 34 recognizes that “general purpose financial reports prepared in conformity with accounting standards issued by the FASB also may be regarded as in conformity with GAAP for those entities that have in the past issued such reports.” SFFAS 34 also provides that a federal reporting entity preparing audited financial statements for the first time may adopt FASB standards in the rare case that the needs of its primary users would be best met through the application of FASB standards. The acceptance of these practices raises the question of whether the information prepared under FASB standards may be consolidated with information prepared under FASAB standards in consolidated reports prepared by component reporting entities and in the consolidated government-wide reporting entity.

A80. The Board has considered such issues on several occasions and provided concepts as follows:

The reporting entities of which the components [preparing reports under FASB or regulatory accounting standards] are a part can issue consolidated, consolidating, or combining statements that include the components’ financial information prepared in accordance with the other accounting standards. They need to be sensitive, however, to differences resulting from applying different accounting standards that could be material to the users of the reporting entity’s financial statements. If these differences are material, the standards recommended by FASAB and issued by OMB and GAO should be applied. The components would need to provide any additional disclosures recommended by FASAB and included in the OMB issued standards that would not be required by the other standards.⁶⁴ (SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*, paragraph 78 (excerpt from section on “Financial Reporting For An Organizational Entity”))

A81. The Board determined in SFFAS 34 that FASB-based statements are acceptable in certain circumstances. While there may be significant differences between FASB and FASAB standards, both standards result in accrual-basis information and disclosures that aid users in understanding the information. Converting FASB-based information to FASAB-based

⁶⁴ In October 1999, FASAB was recognized as the Rule 203 standards-setting body for the federal government. As such, FASAB now issues the standards, rather than issuing recommendations to OMB and GAO for issuance of the standards.

information for consolidated financial reports of larger organizations may not be justifiable since conversion may not aid users.

A82. Users may be confused by the presentation of different amounts for a component in its own financial report and in the consolidated financial reports of larger organizations; particularly when both amounts would be in accordance with GAAP for federal entities per SFFAS 34. In addition, conversion imposes a cost and it is not clear that the cost is justifiable based on benefits to the user. Therefore, this Statement establishes that amounts derived for component reporting entities in compliance with SFFAS 34 may be consolidated without adjustment and the aforementioned concepts from SFFAC 2 paragraph 78 are rescinded.

A83. However, if this leads to consolidation in a single line item of amounts measured differently due to differences between FASB and FASAB principles, then one would anticipate disclosures of the different accounting policies and the related amounts to aid the reader in understanding the information provided. The Board considered adopting requirements for such disclosures but believes that existing requirements and long-standing professional practices are sufficient.

A84. The Board initially proposed that activities measured in accordance with FASAB standards and amounts related to intragovernmental were required to be disclosed in the notes of component reporting entities to facilitate eliminations at the government-wide reporting level. However, after further consideration of the comments, the board determined this information may not be relevant for the component reporting entity GPFFRs and was more appropriately obtained in the Treasury closing package. Likewise, the budgetary reporting issues highlighted by respondents appeared to be a reconciliation and system issue that should be addressed in the Treasury Financial Manual instead of an accounting standard. Also during due process it was determined that certain component reporting entities reporting on a FASB basis convert their information to a FASAB basis upon consolidation. The preparers, auditors, and users believe the information is meaningful for their purposes. As this may be the case in certain instances, but not all, the Board did not want this Statement to prevent those wishing to convert from doing so if it aids the users by providing this meaningful information. Hence, while conversion may be appropriate in certain situations, it is not for all.

Disclosure Entities

A85. The Board believes consolidation of disclosure entities would not result in information meeting the basic qualitative characteristics of information in financial reports because it would not provide the most relevant, understandable, or consistent information. The Board believes consolidation of disclosure entities may obscure the boundaries of the risks and rewards intended to be assumed or gained. Further, assets that are not available for purposes other than the specific business operation of the non-consolidated organization might be commingled with federal assets, and liabilities not fully guaranteed by the federal government might be added to federal liabilities. Instead, financial balances and amounts for organizations having the characteristics of disclosure entities should be kept separate from balances and amounts for those organizations having the characteristics of consolidation entities to prevent distortions to the consolidated financial statements.

A86. The Board believes SFFAC 1 recognizes the challenges that may arise in applying traditional approaches to financial reporting. SFFAC 1 paragraph 49 states "...Federal

accounting and financial reporting are shaped by, and need to respond to, the unique characteristics and environment of the federal government.” SFFAC 1 paragraph 105 further explains “reports must accurately reflect the distinctive nature of the federal government and must provide information useful to the people, their elected representatives, and federal executives...” SFFAC 1 also provides the qualitative characteristics of information in financial reports, by identifying these basic characteristics: understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability.⁶⁵

A87. This Statement provides flexibility in identifying needed information regarding disclosure entities because the range of disclosure entities is broad and different information may need to be disclosed to meet the reporting objectives. Providing this flexibility allows the preparer to present information judged most necessary to meet reporting objectives while also providing an understanding of the potential effect of the relationship on the consolidation entity’s financial statements.

Factors in Determining Disclosures

A88. Because of the flexibility needed regarding disclosures, preparers are provided a list of factors to assist in determining what disclosures to include. Materiality is an overarching consideration in financial reporting. Preparers should consider both qualitative and quantitative materiality in determining disclosure entity presentation and disclosure. Beyond materiality, the factors provided in this Statement assist in determining the nature and extent of information regarding a disclosure entity to be provided.

A89. The factors are to be considered in the aggregate; no individual weight should be assigned or interpreted. The assessment of the appropriate disclosures should be made after considering all the factors. During due process, several respondents disagreed with the factor “*Disclosure entity views/perspective*” that provided for consideration and judgment of about how the disclosure entity views its relationship with the federal government. Most respondents did not believe this should influence the level of disclosures and noted that often the reporting entity would not be aware of the disclosure entity views. The Board recognized that there may be situations where the disclosure entity’s view regarding its relationship with the federal government should influence the type and extent of information that is disclosed. However, it may be difficult to state operationally how this would affect disclosures in given situations. Therefore, while the Board agrees this factor may be relevant, the Board nonetheless removed it from this Statement.

Disclosure Requirements

A90. The Board recognizes that although this Statement provides flexibility in meeting the disclosure objectives, a wide variety of information is listed as examples to meet the intended objectives and there are not requirements for how information must be aggregated. Qualitative and quantitative factors are considered in determining whether information regarding a disclosure entity is presented separately due to its significance or aggregated with the information regarding other disclosure entities. If information is aggregated, aggregation may be based on disclosure entity type, class, investment type, or a particular

⁶⁵ SFFAC 1, paragraph 156.

event deemed significant to the reporting entity. For example, one reporting entity may determine it appropriate to aggregate by investment types, such as equity or loan; another by disclosure entity type, such as receiverships; and yet another by class, such as museum.

A91. Further, disclosures should be integrated so that concise, meaningful and transparent information is provided. Integration is accomplished by providing a single comprehensive note regarding the disclosure. Care should be taken to ensure the objectives are met, without producing unintended consequences. Preparers should keep in mind there are associated costs and potential audit implications with any information included in a GPFFR. Incorporating by reference or including other entities' summary financial statements or summary financial information generally would result in an auditor being required to gain audit assurance on that information and thereby may result in additional audit costs.

A92. The Board believes any financial information about disclosure entities in the reporting entity's GPFFR should be based on accrual basis standards specific to the type of organization while minimizing additional costs on the disclosure entity. There will be instances where information about disclosure entities is produced for reporting periods that differ from the reporting entity's reporting period. To minimize additional costs, the Board agreed that if disclosure entities have a different reporting period than the reporting entity's GPFFR, disclosure of information from a reporting period ending within the reporting entity's reporting period is acceptable. The Board performed outreach on this issue to the audit community and to the federal entity task force. Generally, the feedback supported this approach.

A93. However, due to the fact there could be a large time lag, there should be a provision for disclosing significant changes in the information as a result of events occurring after the issuance of the disclosure entities' audited financial statements and before the issuance of the reporting entity's audited financial statements for a later fiscal year-end. The Board notes this would only be necessary if the disclosure entities' summarized financial statements or summarized financial information were presented. Otherwise normal transactions would be captured throughout the year so this would be a somewhat narrowed focus.

Related Parties

A94. The Board determined it should define "related parties" and address them within this Statement for several reasons. Related party reporting is such a fundamental notion within GAAP and the auditing standards that addressing how related party concepts apply in the federal domain is important. Absent clear related party standards in the federal domain, the Board believes the private sector concepts would be applied by default and that application would be inappropriate.

A95. Because of the extent of the federal government's relationships—whether already established or implied—"related parties" concepts may result in numerous relationships requiring disclosure. Therefore, the Board requires disclosure of related party relationships of such significance to the reporting entity that it would be misleading to exclude information about them. For clarity of intent, the standards rely heavily on listing parties to be included and excluded.

A96. In addition, this Statement provides room for judgment because one cannot anticipate all types of relationships the federal government may have or might have in the future that should be reported. While the standards identify potential exclusions that generally would not be related parties (and those that may) one should consider the many complex relationships where significant influence is exerted. Judgment will be required to determine which significant influences may pose risks that warrant disclosures and these standards do not preclude the reporting of a related party if factors deem it appropriate. The related parties category is needed to provide for disclosure of those organizations that are not included under the inclusion principles but where there is an existing relationship of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude.

A97. Component reporting entities of a single controlling entity are generally subject to related party reporting requirements in other standard-setting domains but will not be considered related parties under federal standards.⁶⁶ In reaching this conclusion, the Board discussed how jointly controlled component reporting entities present information about their relationships. Presently, component reporting entities are required by OMB guidance to state in the management's discussion and analysis section that: "The statements should be read with the realization that they are for a component of the U.S. Government, a sovereign entity." In addition, existing standards require recognition of inter-entity costs to ensure that cost information is not misstated as a result of relationships between component reporting entities. While members noted that readers may need additional contextual information to understand what these complex relationships imply about component reporting entity information, the decision to exclude these entities from related party reporting placed such information requirements outside the scope of this Statement.

A98. During its due process, the Board considered a request that 'related parties' language be modified to clarify that members appointed to boards as individuals and the entities they are affiliated with are not in related party relationships with the departments or agencies. The Board did not believe additional language was necessary as the broad classes of exclusions provided were sufficient. Board members noted concern with broad exclusions of board members and organizations with which they are affiliated because there may be situations where disclosures would be appropriate. Further, current practices have provided meaningful and transparent information and the Board believes this information should continue to be provided absent a change in circumstances.

A99. The Board further understood the respondent's concern that the term 'related party,' as commonly used in financial reports, may imply less than arms-length transactions. The Board believes once federal standards are issued, the term 'related parties' in the federal environment will develop its own unique meaning—that is, relationships of such significance to the reporting entity that it would be misleading to exclude information if one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions. There is a focus on exposures to risk of loss or potential gain as a result of the relationship. Additionally, the standards do not prevent an entity from referring to related parties as "affiliated institutions" or any other appropriately descriptive term. When doing so, it may be informative to explain the relationships by including information such as conflict of interest rules and other frameworks under which they operate.

⁶⁶ Therefore, intragovernmental transactions would not be considered related party transactions.

A100. During due process, certain respondents asked for clarification regarding the difference between a disclosure entity and a related party. More specifically, the respondents had difficulty finding a distinction between the characteristics of a related party and those of a disclosure entity meeting the "misleading to exclude" inclusion principle. When considering whether the principles required clarification, the Board noted the key difference between related parties and included organizations is that related parties are not controlled or owned but are significantly influenced by or influencing the federal government. In considering whether an organization rises to "misleading to exclude" the Board believes this distinction between included organizations and related parties will be helpful. The Board did not believe there was a need to revise the standards.

A101. The Board recognizes the difficulty in applying new standards to complex relationships. However, the Board believes the standards are clear. While there is a key change in the application of principles from the government-wide perspective, central agency coordination and guidance during the implementation process will aid users in adopting this perspective.

Proposed Amendments to SFFAC 2, Entity and Display

A102. This Statement provides amendments to SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*. This Statement provides a description of the change to SFFAC 2 and an explanation as to why the change is being made. Most of the conforming changes are rescissions that result from movement of criteria for determining what organizations are required to be included in the federal reporting entity's GPFFR from a concepts statement to a standards statement.

A103. Paragraphs 54—77 and 79—112 of SFFAC address concepts outside the scope of this Statement and are not amended.

A104. In addition, no changes are made to paragraphs 11-37 of SFFAC 2 because the Board believes these paragraphs provide the conceptual underpinning for understanding the structure of the federal government and how this relates to reporting entities for general purpose federal financial reporting. Although there may be some small differences in terminology in those paragraphs, the Board did not believe they were significant enough to warrant amendments.

A105. Paragraphs 47-50 of SFFAC 2 identify certain organizations or types of organizations (the Federal Reserve System, Government Sponsored Enterprises, and Bailout Entities) that could be included in the government-wide reporting entity based on the SFFAC 2 concepts but that should not be included. This Statement establishes principles to provide users of GPFFRs with comprehensive financial information while recognizing the complexity of the federal government and its relationships with varied organizations. The principles can be applied to the organizations previously excluded and conclusions reached to include the organizations—either as consolidation entities or disclosure entities—or to continue to exclude the organizations. SFFAC 2 is being amended to ensure that concepts provide a framework for standards-setting but do not themselves establish standards by listing specific exclusions.

Other Unique Situations

A106. As part of the exposure draft process, the Board also asked respondents if there were other unique situations that should be addressed within this Statement. The Board received

input from respondents on several example organizations that they believe should be clarified in this Statement. The Board considered the suggestions against the goal to develop principles-based standards that could be applied to all organizations. The Board believes the standards are sufficiently clear. Therefore, the Board did not revise the proposed requirements in response to these unique circumstances.

Board Approval

A107. This Statement was approved for issuance by **X** members of the Board. One member dissented. The written ballots are available for public inspection at the FASAB's offices. The dissent of the member who opposed the issuance of this Statement is presented in paragraphs A108 through A115.

A108. Mr. Steinberg dissents because this Statement asserts that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities are part of the federal government reporting entity. He concurs there should be disclosure of the relationships of these organizations to the reporting entity, the nature and magnitude of relevant activities during the period and balances at the end of the period, and the reporting entity's future exposures to financial and non-financial risks and rewards resulting from these relationships, and has pointed to the numerous accounting standards already requiring those disclosures. However, he believes there are three compelling reasons to not specify that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities are part of the federal government entity.

A109. Accounting literature has traditionally followed the postulate that, for an organization to be deemed part of a larger organization, the relationship has to be other than temporary—a condition that does not exist with the receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities. The desire to remain consistent with this postulate was pointed out by more than one respondent to the Exposure Draft. The Board nonetheless maintained that organizations for which the relationships are temporary, such as receiverships, conservatorships, or intervention entities, are part of the reporting entity, but modified the standards to state they generally would be classified as disclosure entities rather than consolidation entities. Mr. Steinberg believes the purpose of the postulate is to define the relationship that should exist in order that there be reporting, and not the form of the reporting itself.

A110. The policy of the federal government is to not engage in activities that are typically conducted by the private sector. Banking is an activity that since the nation's founding, has generally been conducted by the private sector. Although failed and failing banks are taken into receivership, it is not because the government intends to provide banking services, but only to oversee an orderly liquidation or transfer of those banks' assets, and thereby protect the depositors. Likewise, the organizations for which the government has, from time to time, decided to provide temporary financial support, that is, intervention entities, are in sectors of the economy that the federal government recognizes are not its function: automobile manufacturing and financing, manufacture of weapons systems, commercial insurance, banking, state and local government. Including recipients of temporary financial support as part of the reporting entity, as this Statement does, can be inferred as an expansion of the federal government into areas traditionally reserved for the private sector.

A111. Some of the most strident political arguments in recent years are about the expanding reach of the federal government into the private sector. Issuance of accounting standards

that assert that entities normally viewed as outside the federal government (for example, automobile manufacturers, automobile financing companies, defense manufacturers, insurance companies, privately-owned banks, state and local governments) are now part of the federal government entity supports the position of those that claim the federal government is slowly expanding its reach and becoming increasingly socialist. Accounting standards should not appear to support a political position.

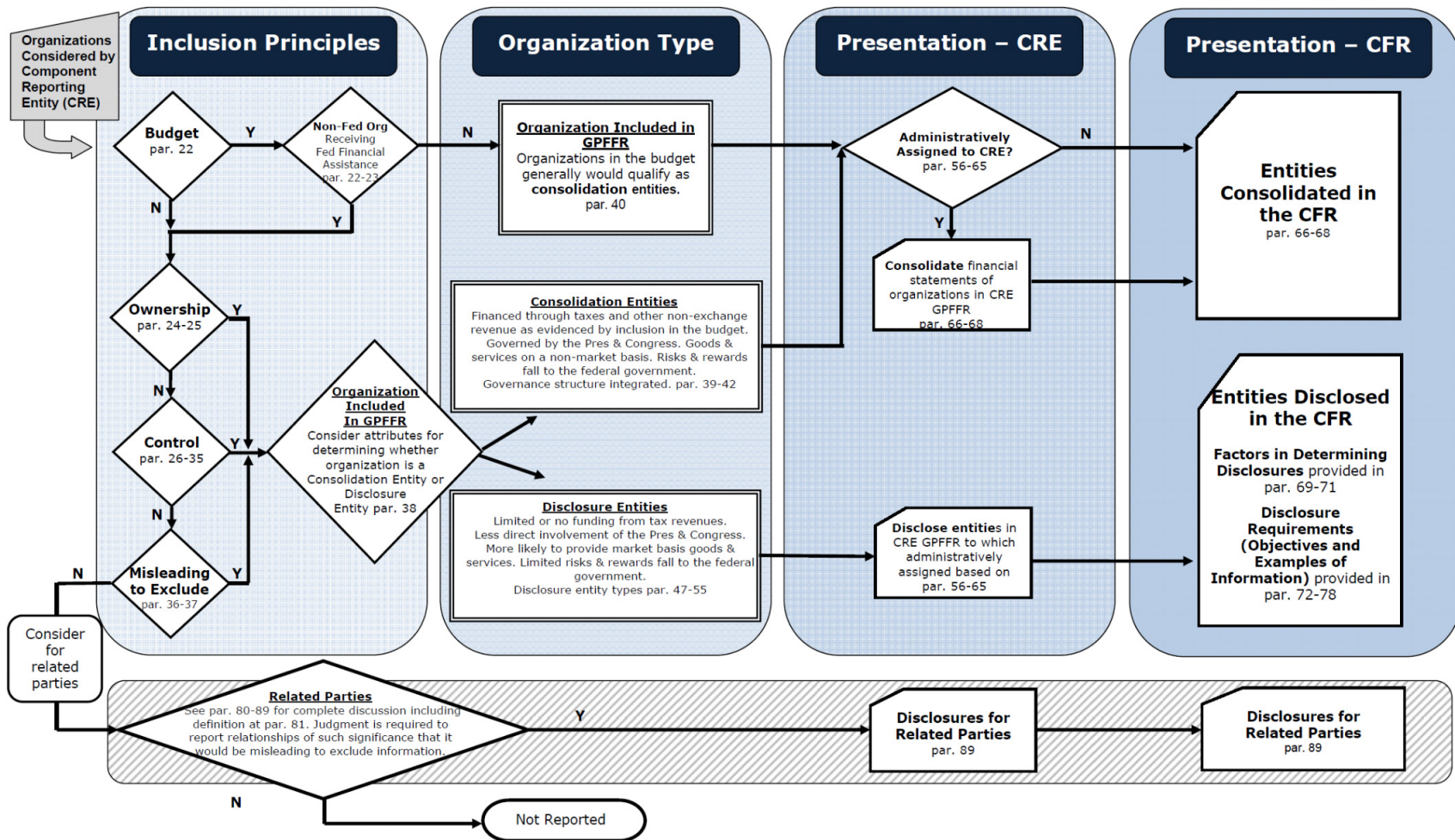
A112. Indeed, the inappropriateness of stating that receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities are part of the reporting entity is revealed by a disavowal and self-contradiction in the Statement itself. Paragraphs 51-55 identify receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities as one of the parts of the reporting entity that are deemed disclosure entities. Paragraph A63, on the other hand, recognizes that interventions create a need for accountability, but then states that this does not make the disclosure entities arising from intervention actions “federal government entities,” that is, part of the federal government.

A113. Mr. Steinberg agrees the accountability for receiverships, conservatorships, and intervention entities should be disclosed, but they should not be listed as part of the federal entity based on long-standing accounting postulates, the existing policy of the federal government, and the potential appearance that the accounting standards support a particular political agenda.

A114. Mr. Steinberg also points out that one of the issues for which the Reporting Entity project was started was that the federal government operates museums, performing arts organizations, and other organizations funded partly by appropriations and partly by donations, but only the portions funded by appropriations are reported in the government-wide report. The Board agrees that the entirety of these organizations, and not just the portion funded by appropriations, should be included in the government-wide GPFFR, whether through consolidation or as disclosure entities. The requirements for this practice are stated in footnotes 12 and 40 and in the Basis for Conclusions, paragraphs A27 and A28 only, but not in the body of the standards.

A115. Mr. Steinberg also dissents because he believes the Board is establishing a bad precedent by defining accounting standards in footnotes and in the Basis for Conclusions, and, particularly, when the standards will require a change from current practice. He believes that accounting requirements should be stated clearly in the body of the standards in order that there be no uncertainty regarding the proper accounting and financial reporting.

APPENDIX B: FLOWCHART



APPENDIX C: ILLUSTRATIONS

Preamble

These illustrations demonstrate how the provisions of this Statement could be applied to organizations given simplified hypothetical circumstances. They are for illustrative purposes only and are nonauthoritative. They do not:

1. represent actual organizations,
2. provide a thorough analysis of all the facts and circumstances that are needed to reach a conclusion in practice,
3. indicate a preferred method of analyzing facts and circumstances, and
4. substitute for the application of professional judgment to actual facts and circumstances.

These illustrations follow the sequence presented in the decision flowchart in Appendix B. All tentative conclusions are based primarily on the hypothetical circumstances presented. In most illustrations, the tentative conclusions refer to consideration of other factors by management and the auditor. This reference is included to emphasize that, in practice, consideration of all relevant facts and circumstances would be needed to reach conclusions. The reader should assume that the general reference to “other factors” means that such factors, in aggregate, supported the conclusions implied by the necessarily limited assumed facts and circumstances presented in each illustration.

Application of the standards to actual organizations requires consideration of the circumstances specific to each organization and the exercise of professional judgment. Although the limited assumed facts and circumstances presented in the illustrations may be similar to situations at a particular reporting entity, they should not be used in practice as a substitute for a complete and thorough consideration of all of the relevant facts and circumstances, which may lead to a conclusion different from the tentative conclusions in these illustrations. For example, the illustrations make certain assumptions that, in practice, require judgment of the specific facts and circumstances to make appropriate determinations.

All of the illustrations discuss administrative assignments to component reporting entities where there is only one component reporting entity relationship described. In reality, more than one component reporting entity may have a relationship with the illustrative organization. In such cases, additional information would need to be considered to determine whether other administrative assignments exist.

ABC Department

(In the Budget—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Congress established ABC Department (ABC), a federal organization, to promote entrepreneurship and innovation as a means to address national economic and environmental challenges. Provisions that govern ABC are generally prescribed in legislation and ABC accomplishes its mission through the activities of various bureaus, grants to research institutions, and contracts with universities and not-for-profit organizations.

The executive leadership of ABC consists of a secretary, deputy secretary, and three assistant secretaries. The President nominates and the Senate confirms each of these officials. These officials serve at the pleasure of the President. ABC is subject to all laws and regulations applicable to executive branch agencies.

ABC relies on appropriated public funds to conduct its mission and is listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information. The President and the Congress consider ABC's requests for resources and determine the amount that should be budgeted to provide services. Furthermore, ABC is not considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances, management determined and the auditor concurred that ABC should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because it (1) meets the first of the three inclusion principles (being listed in the budget) and (2) is not a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

Further, because it is listed in the budget, ABC generally would qualify as a consolidation entity assuming no information to the contrary. In this example, management determined and the auditor concurred that there were no facts contradicting the assumption that ABC is a consolidation entity. As a consolidation entity, ABC's financial statements should be consolidated in the government-wide GPFFR.

Administrative Assignments

The assumed facts and circumstances do not indicate ABC should be consolidated with another component reporting entity. Further consideration of ABC's relationships with other consolidation entities would be needed to determine if ABC has been administratively assigned to another component reporting entity. Further consideration would also be needed to identify any consolidation entities or disclosure entities administratively assigned to ABC.

Epsilon Corporation

(In the Budget—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Congress and the President established Epsilon Corporation as an independent government corporation to insure consumer funds placed in trust with certain types of institutions. Federal legislation established provisions that govern Epsilon's activities. Epsilon is governed by a seven member board of directors and each board member is appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. The Congress monitors Epsilon's activities by conducting hearings on Epsilon's programs and requesting Government Accountability Office (GAO) and Office of Inspector General (OIG) audits.

Epsilon is listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. Epsilon receives its funding based on legislation permitting it to receive and spend premiums from the institutions it insures. Legislation limits how Epsilon can invest proceeds from premiums and, to help ensure that Epsilon remains financially viable, legislation requires Epsilon to have a reserve fund. The board of directors determines the level of the reserve fund. If Epsilon encounters a shortfall, the organization may borrow a limited amount from the U.S. Department of the Treasury (Treasury), but any additional funding requirements must be obtained from premium assessments.

Epsilon is required to periodically report to the Congress and the President on matters such as:

- Program performance results
- Financial position, results of operations, and cash flows
- Adequacy of internal controls and systems

Furthermore, Epsilon is not considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances, management determined and the auditor concurred that Epsilon Corporation should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because it meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget) and is not a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

Further, because it is listed in the budget, Epsilon generally would qualify as a consolidation entity assuming no information to the contrary. In this example, management determined and the auditor concurred that there were no facts rebutting or contradicting the assumption that Epsilon is a consolidation entity. As a consolidation entity, Epsilon's financial statements should be consolidated in the government-wide GPFFR.

Administrative Assignments

There is no information included in the assumed facts and circumstances indicating that Epsilon should be consolidated with another component reporting entity. Further consideration of Epsilon's relationships with other consolidation entities would be needed to determine if Epsilon has been administratively assigned to another component reporting entity or has had consolidation entities administratively assigned to it. Also, further consideration would be needed to identify any disclosure entities administratively assigned to Epsilon for which disclosures are needed.

Sigma Association

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Disclosure Entity (Financially Independent))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Congress and the President established Sigma Association (Sigma) as a not-for-profit, non-taxpayer funded organization to market innovative U.S. agricultural technology worldwide and to respond to any claims of damage arising from new technology. The fundamental purpose of the corporation is specified in legislation and its mission statement is “to open new markets for U.S. agricultural technology through a cooperative marketing strategy and risk-sharing approach for market participants.”

Sigma is governed by a ten-member board of directors. Five members are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. Four members are elected by industry members. The Secretary of Agriculture (or his/her designee) serves as a voting ex-officio member of the board. No more than three of the appointed members may be from the same political party. Board members serve seven-year terms and can only be removed for cause (meaning they may not be removed for policy decisions). Also, Congress monitors Sigma’s activities by conducting hearings on Sigma’s programs and requesting GAO audits.

Sigma is financed by fees imposed on industry members. Sigma’s board of directors must establish an annual budget and legislation limits how Sigma can invest proceeds from fees. To help ensure that Sigma remains financially viable, legislation requires Sigma to have a reserve fund. The board of directors determines the level of the reserve fund after considering input from industry members. If Sigma encounters a shortfall, it may borrow a limited amount from the Treasury, but any additional funding requirements must be obtained from future fee assessments on industry members.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances, and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Sigma should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because Sigma meets the third inclusion principle (control with expected benefits or risk of loss). Indicators that the federal government can control Sigma are that the Congress and/or the President (1) established its fundamental purpose and mission through legislation, and (2) appoint a majority of the members of its board of directors (its governing body). Each of these facts individually would be sufficient to indicate control such that Sigma would be included.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, Sigma should be reported as a disclosure entity because it is a financially independent organization. Management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate, weighed them against other considerations, and used professional judgment.

Evidence suggesting that it is a disclosure entity includes:

1. Tax revenue is not appropriated for ongoing operations.

2. The corporation is relatively financially independent because it is primarily funded from a source other than appropriations. Its budget and fees are not subject to Congressional or Presidential approval.
3. Having seven-year terms for directors who are not subject to removal for policy decisions indicate a higher degree of autonomy than executive branch appointees. This governance structure vests greater decision-making authority with the board while insulating it from political influence. As a result, Congressional and Presidential oversight is less direct since they are not involved in decisions such as the level of reserves needed.
4. While Sigma is permitted to borrow from the Treasury, such borrowing is limited. This means risks to the federal government are limited. Instead, Sigma is expected to maintain its operations and meet its liabilities with revenues received from sources outside of the federal government.

Evidence suggesting that Sigma may be a consolidation entity includes:

1. The President and the Senate, who appoint and confirm, respectively, members of the board of directors as well as establish organizational authorities in legislation, have a governance role.
2. Sigma provides a service that is not available from market participants. Its fees are adjusted to recover losses rather than to respond to market influences. Hence, its fees are not market-based.

Administrative Assignment

Because each disclosure entity must be reported by at least one consolidation entity, management considered whether Sigma has been administratively assigned to the Department of Agriculture. Evidence suggesting administrative assignment to the Department of Agriculture includes that the secretary serves as an ex-officio member of the board.

As a result, management determined and the auditor concurred that the Department of Agriculture should disclose information regarding Sigma in its GPFFR. If Sigma is also administratively assigned to other component reporting entities, then those component reporting entities should also consider the need to disclose information in their GPFFRs.

Scholars University

(Not Included)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Congress and the President chartered Scholars University as a small, private, independent, not-for-profit educational institution and legislation describes the mission of the university. The legislation also indicates that the university is not an instrumentality of the federal government and that the federal government does not assume any liabilities of the university.

Scholars University is governed by a 29-member board of trustees. The Secretary of Education is an ex-officio member of the board and the remaining members are elected by the board for three-year terms. The board controls and directs the university's affairs such as determining the university's tuition and fee structure, adding or removing colleges within the university, and establishing new research institutions.

To support its mission, Scholars University receives most of its revenue from tuition, fees, and private contributions. The university receives appropriations to support some of its academic programs. The university is listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information under a Department of Education program because an amount is appropriated for Scholars University each year. Although the appropriations discuss limitations on how the funds may be used, the university generally has discretion over how it chooses to allocate funds for its academic programs and construction activities.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other information, management determined and the auditor concurred that Scholars University should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Although it meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget), management asserts that Scholars University is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance in the form of a grant. Any non-federal organization listed in the budget should be assessed against the other two principles. So, management must determine if the other inclusion principles are met or if it would be misleading to exclude the university.

The initial analysis is summarized below:

- Ownership—The Congress and the President chartered Scholars University as a private, independent organization. There is no evidence that the federal government has an ownership interest in the university.
- Control—Based on the assumptions presented, the persuasive indicators of control have not been met. While the federal government chartered Scholars University, the standards provide that further indicators of control must be present to conclude that the organization is controlled. The remaining persuasive indicators—appointing or removing a majority of the governing board members, establishing financial and operating policies, and dissolving the university and having access to its assets—are not met. The available facts and circumstances suggest that Scholars is not controlled. [Note, however, for brevity this illustration does not present an analysis of indicators of control that in the

aggregate may reveal that Scholars is controlled. Such an analysis may be needed in practice.]

- Misleading to exclude—Scholars University is a small not-for-profit that is listed in the Budget solely as a program within the Department of Education. Management determined and the auditors concurred that it is both quantitatively and qualitatively immaterial. Also, there were no other facts and circumstances that would suggest that Scholars University should be included in the GPFFR. As a result, it would not be misleading to exclude.

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Scholars University should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

Education Research Institute (ERI)

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The purpose of the Education Research Institute (ERI) is to assist state and local officials in making informed decisions regarding effective education methods. ERI was established by the Congress and the President through a public law specifying the organization's:

- status as a tax exempt not-for-profit,
- purpose and duties,
- governance structure,
- sources of financing, and
- reporting requirements.

The public law establishing ERI requires reauthorization of its operations every five years. If the Congress and the President do not authorize continued operation, ERI must cease operations and distribute its net assets to a successor organization designated by the federal government. If ERI is unable to satisfy its liabilities prior to dissolution, the federal government will assume its liabilities.

ERI is governed by a seven-member board of directors; five of whom are voting. Two members are specific federal officials within the Department of Education who serve part-time and do not have voting rights. The remaining five serve full-time, are appointed by the Association of Local School Boards, and serve six-year terms. One of these five members is elected by the board to serve as chairperson.

The legislation creating ERI designates funding of \$1 per elementary school student per year to be made available from the general fund of the U.S. Treasury to the ERI trust fund. An annual transfer to ERI is not listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information but is included in the Department of Education's Congressional Budget Justification. The board of directors is authorized to establish an annual budget not to exceed the amounts available in the trust fund. ERI may fund up to 25% of its annual budget through donations but may not use federal funds to solicit donations.

The Department of Education approves the ERI annual budget. The department also reports information related to ERI activities in its annual performance report and Congressional Budget Justification.

ERI must provide annually an audited financial report to the Department of Education and relevant Congressional committees.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that ERI should be included in the government-wide

GPFFR because the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit) is met. A persuasive indicator of control exists because the federal government can unilaterally dissolve the organization and have access to its assets and responsibility for its liabilities.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, ERI should be reported as a consolidation entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that ERI is a consolidation entity.

Evidence suggesting that ERI is a consolidation entity includes:

1. It is primarily financed by taxes.
2. Federal government has assumed the risks associated with ERI's liabilities.
3. The purpose of ERI is to assist state and local officials by providing consultation services on a non-market basis.
4. ERI's annual budget is approved by the Department of Education and the Department also provides information related to ERI activities in its annual performance report and Congressional Budget Justification. These activities show that elected officials, acting with and through politically appointed officials, make decisions regarding ERI's budget.

Evidence suggesting that ERI is a disclosure entity includes:

1. A majority of the members of the board of directors is appointed by non-federal officials.
2. ERI is able to access donations to sustain some of its operations.

Administrative Assignment

The Department of Education should consider whether or not ERI is administratively assigned to it. Evidence that indicates ERI is administratively assigned includes Education's participation in ERI's budgetary process and inclusion of information regarding ERI in its own Congressional Budget Justification. Having considered the above information and other available evidence, the Department of Education determined and its auditor concurred that it should consolidate ERI's financial statements in its GPFFR.

Mediation Corporation

(Control based on Indicators in the Aggregate—Disclosure Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Mediation Corporation (Mediation) was established as a 501(c)(3) non-member not-for-profit organization through a public law specifying the organization's:

- status and operating location,
- purpose and duties,
- governance structure,
- sources of financing, and
- reporting requirements.

The purpose of Mediation is to ensure that low-income individuals have access to mediation services to resolve non-criminal legal disputes. An assigned duty is to develop and maintain a network of state and local government organizations to deliver services financed by grants. Network members may raise funds to finance delivery of services through taxes, donations, and other grants without limitation.

The governing board comprises 13 members including Mediation's executive secretary. The President nominates candidates to fill the board member positions. A panel of local government officials participating in the network selects new members of the governing board from among the nominees. No more than seven members may be affiliated with the same political party. The members elect their chairperson from among the members. The President appoints the executive secretary and the Senate confirms the appointment. The executive secretary's term is fifteen years during which the President may only remove the appointee for cause.

Mediation is financed by an annual appropriation, interest earnings, and grants from any public or private grant-making organization. Grants must not finance more than 20 percent of its annual budget. The U.S. Attorney General approves the annual budget. Any liabilities incurred by Mediation must be settled from its assets and are not backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Government.

An annual appropriation is provided in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level for "Grants to the Mediation Corporation." The appropriation is made to the Department of Justice which transfers budget authority to Mediation. Mediation manages its cash balances similar to other not-for-profits and may retain any interest earned on unspent funds. In addition, it may apply for and receive grants from any grant making organization—public or private—subject to the 20 percent limitation.

The public law creating Mediation requires it to make annual audited financial reports publicly available. Mediation also files annual tax returns with the Internal Revenue Service. Furthermore, Mediation is considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Although Mediation meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget), it is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. To determine if Mediation should be included in the government-wide GPFFR, management considered the remaining inclusion principles—majority ownership interest and control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit.

It is unclear, based on the assumed facts and circumstances, whether Mediation is owned by the federal government and, therefore, meets the second inclusion principle. Therefore, management must consider the control indicators to determine if the third inclusion principle (control) is met. None of the persuasive indicators of control are present based on the assumed facts and circumstances so considerable professional judgment is required to determine whether—in the aggregate—the indicators provide evidence of control. The indicators suggesting federal government control over Mediation include:

1. The federal government provides significant input regarding selection of the organization's governing board members since a selection can only be made from among candidates identified by the President.
2. The President appoints a key executive—the executive secretary—and may remove him or her for cause.
3. Federal law restricts Mediation's capacity to generate revenues since only appropriations, interest earned, and grants may be used. In addition, only 20 percent of its annual needs may be met through grants.
4. The U.S. Attorney General approves the annual budget.
5. Federal law requires annual audited financial reports.
6. Federal law directs Mediation to work through a network of government agencies to provide services.

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, and using professional judgment, management determined and the auditor concurred that Mediation should be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, Mediation should be reported as a disclosure entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that Mediation is a disclosure entity.

Evidence suggesting that Mediation is a consolidation entity includes:

1. It is primarily funded by taxes.

2. Elected officials determine Mediation's budget, because at least 80 percent of its funding is appropriated to Justice. In addition, an appointed federal official, the U.S. Attorney General, approves Mediation's annual budget.

Evidence suggesting that Mediation is a disclosure entity includes:

1. Members of its governing body are selected by non-federal officials, serve longer terms than political appointees, must include members from different political parties, and may only be removed for cause. These conditions insulate the governing body from political influence.
2. Mediation has some access to non-federal funding through grants and its network of service providers is free to access non-federal funding for service delivery (subject to the 20 percent limitation).
3. Federal government has not assumed risks related to Mediation's liabilities.

Administrative Assignments

The Department of Justice should consider whether or not Mediation is administratively assigned to it. Evidence that indicates it is administratively assigned includes the Department of Justice's participation in Mediation's budgetary process. After considering the above and other factors, and using professional judgment, management at the Department of Justice determined and the auditor concurred that disclosures regarding Mediation should be presented in its GPFFR.

Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario A)

(Not Included)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Individual bicycle shop owners determined that a nation-wide network of shops and trails was needed to encourage greater reliance on bicycles for transportation and invested in a new corporation, Bicycle America (BA). BA's mission was to create a coast-to-coast network and ensure wide access to bicycling. Shares in the venture are held by local bicycle shops in all major cities.

BA is governed by a board of directors. The board controls and directs the organization's affairs and interests. Board members are elected by the shareholders to serve three-year terms.

Until recently, BA was able to finance its operations from user fees. A recent lawsuit led to serious financial challenges and cash was unavailable to meet pressing needs. Absent a cash inflow, BA was considering closing the trails. Due to exceptional citizen reliance on the trails for transportation and recreation, the federal government intervened and enacted legislation to provide funding.

The federal government provided a short-term loan to BA. The federal financial intervention to preserve BA was not separately identified in the Budget, but was part of a larger federal program within the Department of Transportation.

The funding legislation also established a temporary advisory committee to monitor BA's financial condition and inform Congress of potential issues that may warrant additional actions. In addition, the advisory committee will develop a plan to aid BA in returning to financial solvency and refinancing the short-term loan.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that BA should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Specifically, BA is not listed in the Budget. Further, based on the available information and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred BA does not meet either the remaining ownership or control inclusion principle because BA continues to be owned by common shareholders and governed by the existing board of directors. The advisory committee offers advice to the Congress and does not have authority to direct BA to act. Management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustration, it would not be misleading to exclude BA.

Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario B)

(Ownership—Disclosure Entity (Intervention))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Same as above except that in addition to the actions in Scenario A above, the federal government received shares that carry 51 percent of the voting rights of BA common stock and the advisory committee will develop a plan to sell the shares.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the changed assumptions and no information to the contrary, and using professional judgment, management determined and the auditor concurred that BA should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. When the federal government holds a majority ownership interest, albeit temporary, the owned organization should be included in the government-wide GPFFR.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

The available facts and circumstances indicate that the federal government's involvement with BA is an intervention. Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that BA should be reported as a disclosure entity because (1) separate legal identity is maintained, and (2) limited funding from general tax revenues is provided. The initial determination would need to be evaluated periodically to determine if the classification remains appropriate.

Administrative Assignments

Department of Transportation was assigned responsibility for transferring funds to BA which indicates an administrative assignment. As a result, management determined and their auditor concurred that the department should disclose information regarding BA in its GPFFR. If BA is also administratively assigned to other component reporting entities, then those component reporting entities should also disclose information in their GPFFRs.

Chatham Laboratory

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Consolidation Entity (FFRDC))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Federal Department of ABC (ABC) organized Chatham Laboratory as a federally funded research and development center (FFRDC) to conduct specialized engineering research that supports ABC's mission related to infrastructure and leads to improved services. As specified in the agreement, ABC provides the physical capital and ongoing funding for the FFRDC and sets research goals for Chatham.

ABC selects a contractor to operate Chatham and conduct research consistent with the established goals. ABC is not involved in the day-to-day operations of Chatham. ABC routinely evaluates Chatham's performance and maintains a research office to review strategic plans, consider progress, and serve as a liaison to other federal institutions. ABC reports on Chatham's efforts in its own performance reports.

Chatham operations are funded entirely through appropriations provided to ABC. ABC identifies Chatham in its Congressional Budget Justification but Chatham is not specifically identified in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. Instead, amounts for Chatham are included in a larger research program which makes payments to the contractor consistent with the terms of the contract. Chatham's contract operator must submit financial and performance reports to ABC periodically. All Chatham assets belong to the federal government and the results of Chatham research are the property of the federal government. In addition, ABC would be responsible for liabilities arising from use of the facilities to conduct research such as environmental cleanup liabilities. ABC is also responsible for employee benefits in the event Chatham operations are terminated.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Chatham should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. While contracting for the operation of Chatham, officials at ABC also act as the governing body by establishing the purpose and mission of Chatham. Further, ABC continues in this role through its involvement in Chatham's strategic planning and monitoring of performance. Establishing the purpose and mission of an organization is a persuasive indicator that control exists.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, Chatham should be reported as a consolidation entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that Chatham is a consolidation entity.

Evidence suggesting that Chatham is a consolidation entity includes:

1. It is primarily financed by taxes.

2. The federal government has assumed the risks associated with Chatham's liabilities.
3. Chatham's annual budget is developed by ABC officials and information related to Chatham activities is provided in ABC's performance report and Congressional Budget Justification. This indicates that decision-making regarding the budget is exercised by elected officials through politically appointed officials and the budget process.

Evidence suggesting that Chatham is a disclosure entity includes:

1. Day-to-day operating decisions are made by a contractor.

After considering the above analysis and other factors, management determined and the auditor concurred that Chatham is a consolidation entity.

Administrative Assignment

ABC should consider whether or not Chatham is administratively assigned to it. In the example, evidence suggesting Chatham is administratively assigned includes ABC's role in Chatham's strategic planning, budgeting, and administration. Having considered the assumed facts and circumstances and other available evidence, the Department of ABC determined and its auditor concurred that it should consolidate Chatham's financial statements in its GPFFR.

Gotham Laboratory

(Not included—Economic Dependency Insufficient to Show Control)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The Department of XYZ (XYZ), a department within the executive branch of the federal government, contracted with Gotham Laboratory (Gotham) to conduct specialized engineering research that fulfills a federal mission related to infrastructure and leads to improved services of XYZ. As specified in the agreement, XYZ provides funding to Gotham and Gotham's management team plans, manages, and executes the assigned research program.

XYZ serves on a panel providing input on the appointment of the board of directors for Gotham. However, the board of directors elects new members and the board manages Gotham's research. Gotham also may engage in any outside research activities approved by its board of directors.

Gotham performs services for various federal and non-federal organizations but receives 90 percent of its funding from XYZ. XYZ receives appropriated funds to support the Gotham research program. The remaining 10 percent of Gotham funding is derived from contracts with other federal agencies and private industry as well as donations. Gotham's budget is not reviewed or approved by any federal officials. Gotham is subject to the usual federal contract oversight and reporting requirements.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that Gotham should not be included in the government-wide GPFFR. Gotham is not listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. Further, based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, Gotham does not meet the inclusion principles of either majority ownership or control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit. Although Gotham appears to be economically dependent on the federal government, it ultimately retains discretion as to whether to accept funding or do business with the federal government. Despite the influence resulting from this dependency, the federal government does not govern Gotham's financial and operating policies. Further, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustration, it would not be misleading to exclude Gotham.

Andromeda Prime Power Systems

(Related Party—GSE)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The federal government created Andromeda Prime Power Systems (APPS) as a government sponsored enterprise (GSE) to facilitate commercial space travel. APPS controls interplanetary travel among a network of commercial space stations and is subject to federal regulations regarding safety and technology transfers to other nations.

APPS is governed by a nine-member board of directors elected by common stock shareholders. Board members serve three-year terms.

APPS issued common stock and received a federal government grant to finance its initial capital and startup costs. The APPS is under no obligation to return the grant funds but is expected to promote U.S. competitive interests in the emerging space travel industry.

During the reporting period, APPS' board approved a strategic plan to expand its systems to accommodate increased commercial demands and APPS issued bonds to finance the initiative. The interest rate required by lenders indicates that the market assumes the federal government has implicitly guaranteed the payment of principal and interest. In its regulatory capacity, the federal government required APPS to establish a capital reserve and created a five-member APPS Advisory Board to monitor and advise Congress on APPS' fiscal operations.

APPS derives its revenues from fees charged to commercial organizations and receives no ongoing federal support through the Budget.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that APPS should not be reported in the government-wide GPFFR as a consolidation entity or disclosure entity. APPS is not listed in the schedule in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* that provides budget account level information and the federal government does not have a majority ownership interest in the company.

Further, management conducted a thorough assessment of control indicators and determined the federal government does not exercise control of APPS. Regulation of APPS does not, by itself, establish control.

However, based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that APPS should be disclosed as a related party. Related parties generally include GSEs not meeting the inclusion principles, especially those organizations for which the relationship is of such significance that it would be misleading to exclude information about it.

U.S. Museum (Scenario A)

(In the Budget—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The U.S. Museum (the Museum) was organized to bring history and lessons about the United States to individuals through educational outreach, teacher training, traveling exhibitions, and scholarship.

The Museum is an independent establishment of the federal government and is governed by a board of trustees, known as the Museum Council. The Council has 13 voting members and 2 nonvoting members. Of the voting members, 11 are appointed by the President and serve 10-year terms (appointments are staggered) and the other 2 are appointed from among members of Congress to serve during their term. The non-voting members are selected by the Council.

The Museum receives an annual appropriation as well as private donations. Annual appropriations account for approximately 90 percent of operations and activities, with the remaining 10 percent coming from donor activities and museum sales. The museum is listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. All donations are considered to be available for use unless specifically restricted by the donor or by time. Furthermore, the Museum is not considered to be a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumptions and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that the Museum should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because the Museum meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget). Further, the President and the Congress appoint the Museum Council which indicates the federal government controls the Museum which meets the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit).

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

Because it is listed in the budget, the Museum generally would qualify as a consolidation entity assuming no information to the contrary. In this example, management determined and the auditor concurred that there were no facts rebutting or contradicting the assumption that the Museum is a consolidation entity. As a consolidation entity, its financial statements should be consolidated in the government-wide GPFFR. The financial statements included should be for the entire organization and thus include the sources and uses for both the appropriations and the donated funds.

Administrative Assignment

Based on a review by management, no other component reporting entity has been assigned administrative responsibilities for the Museum. Therefore, the Museum is consolidated only directly into the government-wide GPFFR.

U.S. Museum (Scenario B)

(Control based on Persuasive Indicator—Disclosure Entity (Financially Independent))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

The U.S. Museum (the Museum) was originally organized by volunteers to bring history and lessons about the United States to individuals through educational outreach, teacher training, traveling exhibitions, and scholarship. The Museum is intended to be a self supporting operation. Shortly after its founding, it entered into a cooperative relationship with the Department of Federal Museums, a department within the executive branch.

The Museum is incorporated as a not-for-profit organization governed by the Museum Council. The Council has 15 voting members referred to as trustees. The presidentially-appointed head of the Department of Federal Museums serves as the Council chairperson. Of the remaining voting trustees, nine are appointed by the President and five are selected and approved by the Council. Except for the chairperson, all trustees serve ten-year terms which are staggered. The Council selects a Board of Directors for the Museum and appoints the Chief Executive Officer.

The Museum is a public-private partnership which receives an annual appropriation as well as private donations, rental income, and sales revenue. No fees are charged for educational events or museum tours. Rental income from the Museum facilities is derived from rates competitive with other venues for similar events. Rental of the facilities is intended to support museum activities such that the museum can eventually be self supporting. Presently, annual appropriations account for approximately 15 percent of operations and activities, with the remaining 85 percent coming from donor activities, rental income, and museum sales. The museum is listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information. The funding received from donations is restricted to use by the Museum and the trustees approve the annual budget including rental income and fundraising goals.

The Museum's employees are not federal employees. The Museum is required to fully fund any deferred compensation programs and to advise its employees that the federal government has not guaranteed their deferred compensation.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred the Museum should be included in the government-wide GPFFR because it meets the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit). Although the Museum also meets the first inclusion principle (in the budget), it is a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. An assessment of the remaining inclusion principles shows that the Museum meets the third inclusion principle (control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit) because it is controlled by the federal government since a majority of the trustees are appointed by the President; a persuasive indicator of control.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, the Museum should be reported as a disclosure entity. In arriving at this conclusion,

management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that the Museum is a disclosure entity.

Evidence suggesting that U. S. Museum is a consolidation entity includes:

1. Appointments to the Council are made by elected officials.
2. Museum services, educational events and tours, are provided on a non-market basis to the general public.

Evidence suggesting that U.S. Museum is a disclosure entity includes:

1. The Museum is a separate legal organization – a not-for-profit – and terms for a majority of Council members are ten-years. This insulates the organization from political influence. Further, day-to-day operations are governed by a board of directors whose members are not directly appointed by elected officials.
2. The Museum is intended to receive limited financing from taxes and market rates are charged for facility rentals.
3. The Museum is required to make explicit that any liability for deferred compensation of its employees is not guaranteed by the federal government. This indicates that limited risks are imposed on the federal government.

Disclosure entities should be presented by the component reporting entity to which they are administratively assigned and, if material, by the government-wide entity.

Administrative Assignment

Management determined and the auditor concurred the Department of Federal Museums should present the Museum as a disclosure entity in its GPFFR because the department is assigned administrative responsibility for the Museum based on appointment of its head to serve as chairperson of the Council.

Firefighters' Housing Limited Partnership

(Owned and Controlled—Consolidation Entity)

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Agency 123 has been authorized to establish pre-positioned housing and equipment storage facilities on federal land to ensure immediate and efficient deployment of firefighting resources in response to wildfires in remote areas. The enabling legislation allows Agency 123 to enter into a wide range of financial agreements with private-sector participants to provide housing and equipment storage for the firefighters.

The agency and a private developer formed a limited partnership—Firefighters' Housing Limited Partnership (FHLP)—to develop, operate, maintain, and own all housing and storage units and facilities within a designated area for 25 years. Agency 123 leased land to FHLP under a 25-year ground lease. At the end of the 25-year ground lease, the agency has the option to renew the partnership for another 25 years. If it does not renew, all structures and land revert back to Agency 123 in accordance with the agency's residual ownership interest. During the 25-year ground lease, Agency 123 will provide an annual payment to FHLP from its appropriated funds for management services, use of the housing by Agency 123 employees during the fire season, and equipment storage year-round.

The private sector partner is guaranteed a minimum payment from FHLP and has no ownership interest in FHLP properties. The private sector partner also is entitled to a share of profits from non-fire season vacation rentals of the housing so long as the facilities meet established condition requirements. Profits not distributed to the private sector partner are retained by FHLP and can be used for capital improvements including development of new housing in adjacent parks under similar terms.

As part of the partnership agreement, Agency 123 has significant authority to determine the policies governing FHLP's activities and to affect day-to-day decisions such as design and construction. Any debt incurred by FHLP must be authorized by the agency. Furthermore, capital and operating budgets require agency approval and financial transactions are monitored on a monthly basis by the agency's contract administration office. The partnership is required to produce audited financial statements annually.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that FHLP should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. A substantial ownership interest is present via the agency's continuing ownership interest. In addition, several control indicators are met as summarized in the following analysis of available information:

1. Agency 123 may be able to direct the partnership regarding the establishment and subsequent revision of financial and operating policies through its review and approval of operating budgets, designs, and condition of the facilities. If so, this would be a persuasive indicator of control. Management should weigh the impact of its role in directing the FHLP's financial and operating policies and consider how much discretion falls to the private sector partner.

2. Other indicators in the aggregate may indicate control. Agency 123 has significant authority to:
 - a. direct the ongoing use of assets,
 - b. approve the budgets and business plans for FHLP,
 - c. require audits, and
 - d. limit borrowing and investment by FHLP.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, FHLP should be reported as a consolidation entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that FHLP is a consolidation entity.

Evidence suggesting that FHLP is a consolidation entity includes the following:

1. FHLP provides housing to firefighters as its primary function on a non-market basis.
2. It is financed by tax revenues supplemented by any retained profits from non-fire season rentals.
3. Decisions are made by organizational leaders at Agency 123 who are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.
4. Funds transferred to FHLP will be approved through the usual budgetary process so that FHLP funding will be included in the budget approved by the Congress and the President.

Evidence suggesting that FHLP is a disclosure entity includes the following:

1. FHLP has a legal identity separate from Agency 123.
2. FHLP is authorized to provide vacation housing services to customers on a market basis and use the proceeds to first compensate the private sector partner and then reduce the cost of firefighter housing borne by the taxpayer.

As a consolidation entity, FHLP's financial statements should be consolidated by the component reporting entity to which it is administratively assigned.

Administrative Assignment

Management determined and the auditor concurred that Agency 123 should consolidate FHLP's financial statements because it is assigned administrative responsibility for FHLP based on its inclusion of FHLP funding in its budget request and its coordination and monitoring of FHLP's plans and performance.

The Blue Mountain Observatory

(Control based on Indicators in the Aggregate—Disclosure Entity (FFRDC))

Assumed Facts and Circumstances

Agency XYZ created an FFRDC, the Blue Mountain Observatory (BMO), to provide facilities and leadership needed to conduct scientific research in a wide range of fields, including the study of black holes. Agency XYZ is BMO's primary sponsor. University Cooperative (UC) is a not-for-profit membership corporation created by 50 universities conducting research that would benefit from use of BMO facilities. UC was created to seek the role of managing, operating, and maintaining BMO under a cooperative agreement with Agency XYZ. UC subsequently entered into a cooperative agreement with Agency XYZ.

UC is governed by a board of trustees appointed to represent each of the 50 member universities. UC trustees appoint an individual to serve as president of BMO. The trustees also oversee BMO operations including providing input on strategic plans, approving the annual program plan before its submission to Agency XYZ for approval, responding to Agency XYZ input, and monitoring financial activities including establishing investment policies. UC employs staff to perform all BMO activities and these individuals are referred to as 'BMO employees.' Member universities fund any non-BMO activities of UC.

The cooperative agreement between UC and Agency XYZ ensures close coordination between Agency XYZ and BMO employees. The agreement contains requirements necessary for Agency XYZ's oversight of both BMO's programs and UC's management activities, including the following provisions:

1. Provide input to a strategic plan developed by BMO employees in collaboration with UC trustees. The strategic plan sets the overall direction and priorities for BMO.
2. Agency XYZ must approve the annual program plan and budget for use of resources.
3. UC must provide to Agency XYZ an annual scientific report and audited financial statements.
4. Agency XYZ participates in developing a five-year strategic plan.
5. BMO and Agency XYZ must meet annually to review progress and ensure that scientific and facility priorities remain consistent with those of Agency XYZ.

UC works cooperatively with Agency XYZ to ensure the effective implementation of the strategic mission of BMO to the benefit of the research community. Mid-way through the current cooperative agreement, Agency XYZ will conduct comprehensive reviews of science, facilities, and management to inform future decisions regarding recompetition of the cooperative agreement for the facility. UC is under no obligation to continue in its role in managing, operating, and maintaining BMO.

In the most recent fiscal year, BMO received \$100 million in funding from Agency XYZ through its cooperative agreement with UC. Agency XYZ proposed the \$100 million in funding in its Congressional Budget Justification and described how the funds would be used to support the

research programs at BMO. In administering the funds provided by Agency XYZ for BMO programs, UC may:

1. expend funds to meet ongoing operational needs,
2. make annual cash contributions to employee benefits programs (accrued leave and pension plans),
3. make annual payments due under long-term leases, and
4. construct or purchase new assets so long as all resulting property is titled to BMO.

In the event the cooperative agreement with UC is terminated, Agency XYZ would assume management responsibility for the facility. Further, Agency XYZ would seek appropriations for termination expenses such as post-retirement benefit liabilities for BMO employees. However, Agency XYZ would be obligated to pay termination benefits only if funds were appropriated for that purpose.

Tentative Conclusions

Based on the assumed facts and circumstances and other considerations, management determined and the auditor concurred that BMO should be included in the government-wide GPFFR. BMO is not listed in the *Budget of the United States Government: Analytical Perspectives—Supplemental Materials* schedule that provides budget account level information so other inclusion principles must be considered. BMO facilities are owned by the federal government and new assets are titled to the federal government. With respect to the control inclusion principle, Agency XYZ establishes the fundamental purpose and mission of BMO through its participation in strategic planning and the overall effort to ensure BMO goals are consistent with Agency XYZ research goals. This effort includes annual actions to approve BMO's annual program plan and operating budget. These actions are persuasive indicators of control.

Classification as a Consolidation Entity or Disclosure Entity

For this illustration, management determined and the auditor concurred that, based on the assumed facts and circumstances as well as other considerations not described in the illustrations, BMO should be reported as a disclosure entity. In arriving at this conclusion, management and the auditor considered the assumed facts and circumstances presented below in the aggregate and, finding no other facts that in the aggregate contradict these, used professional judgment to determine that BMO is a disclosure entity.

Evidence suggesting that BMO is a consolidation entity includes the following:

1. BMO provides, as its primary function, research facilities and leadership to university members of UC on a non-market basis. It is financed by taxpayer funds supplemented by non-government donors.
2. Key operational decisions are made by organizational leaders at Agency XYZ who are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.

3. Funds transferred to BMO will be approved through the usual budgetary process so that use of tax revenues to support BMO is ultimately decided by the Congress and the President.

Evidence suggesting that BMO is a disclosure entity includes the following:

1. BMO has a legal identity separate from Agency XYZ.
2. The governance structure ensures that universities have substantial input regarding BMO's strategic plans and annual program plan. The significant involvement of non-governmental organizations lessens political influence.
3. BMO's liabilities are not obligations of the U.S. government.
4. BMO is authorized to accept donations from non-government organizations.

As a disclosure entity, BMO should be presented by the component reporting entity to which it is administratively assigned.

Administrative Assignment

Management determined and the auditor concurred that Agency XYZ should disclose information about BMO because it is assigned administrative responsibility for BMO based on its inclusion of BMO funding in its budget request and its coordination and monitoring of BMO's plans and performance.

Table 1: Summary Application of Standard

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
ABC Department	Yes				Yes	Organizations listed in the budget generally would qualify as consolidation entities.	
Epsilon Corporation	Yes				Yes	Organizations listed in the budget generally would qualify as consolidation entities.	
Sigma Association	No	No	Yes. A majority of the governing board members is appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate and they established its fundamental purpose and mission through legislation.		Yes		Financially independent organization
Scholars University	Yes but as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance.	No	No. Scholars' board of trustees elects its respective board members. Scholars' board of trustees primarily directs the university's affairs and the university seeks sources of revenue to operate virtually in a self-sustaining manner.	Management and auditor agreement based on facts and circumstances it was not misleading to exclude.	No		
Education Research Institute	No	No	Yes, the federal government can unilaterally dissolve ERI and have access to its assets and responsibility for its liabilities.		Yes	The ERI Trust Fund is primarily funded through taxes, elected officials establish ERI's budget, services are provided on a non-market basis, and federal government assume risk.	

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
Mediation Corporation	Yes but as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance. Therefore, must assess against other principles.	No	Yes. Considering the control indicators in the aggregate, the federal government controls Mediation. It provides significant input on the selection of governing board members, appoints a key executive, limits Mediation's capacity to generate revenue, approves the annual budget, requires audited financial statements, and directs Mediation to work with other governments.		Yes		Mediation's governing body is insulated from political influence and risks are not assumed by the federal government.
Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario A)	No	No. BA is owned by shareholders.	No, governing board members are elected by shareholders rather than subject to political appointment	No, Management and auditor agreement based on facts and circumstances it was not misleading to exclude.	No. Advisory committee offers advice but does not have the authority to direct BA to act.		
Bicycle America, Inc. (Scenario B)	No	Yes, the federal government acquired 51% of the voting rights in BA.			Yes		Intervention activity—separate legal entity with limited financing from general taxes
Chatham Laboratory (FFRDC)	No	The assets and research results are owned.	Yes. The federal government establishes the purpose and mission of Chatham.		Yes	Yes, Chatham is primarily funded by taxes, and governance rests with the President and Congress.	

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
Gotham Laboratory	No	No	No	No, Management and auditor agreement based on facts and circumstances it was not material to exclude.	No. Although it may be economically dependent, Gotham has discretion as to whether to accept funding from the government.		
Andromeda Prime Power Systems (GSE)	No	No	No, APPS' governing body is elected by common shareholders. The APPS Advisory Board advises Congress and does not direct APPS' operations.		No, Management determined and the auditor concurred APPS should be disclosed as a related party.		
U.S. Museum (Scenario A)	Yes				Yes	Yes. The Museum is in the budget and primarily funded by taxes and governance rests with the President and Congress.	
U.S. Museum (Scenario B)	Yes but as a non-federal organization receiving federal financial assistance	No	Yes. The President appoints a majority of the governing body's members.		Yes		The museum is a financially independent organization.

NAME	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED IN THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE GPFFR?					CONSOLIDATION ENTITY OR DISCLOSURE ENTITY	
	IN THE BUDGET	OWNED	CONTROL	MISLEADING TO EXCLUDE	IS THE ORGANIZATION INCLUDED?	A CONSOLIDATION ENTITY (CONSOLIDATED)	A DISCLOSURE ENTITY (DISCLOSED)
Firefighters' Housing Limited Partnership	No	Ownership of property is retained.	Yes. Agency 123 has significant authority to direct the limited partnership's activities and to affect day-to-day activities such as in design and construction and the partnership's purpose is to carry out federal missions and objectives.		Yes	Yes. Taxes fund the housing and risks have been assumed	
Blue Mountain Observatory (FFRDC)	No	Property is owned by the federal government.	Yes. The federal government establishes the purpose and mission of BMO.		Yes		BMO is a separate legal entity and UC plays a significant role in its governance without political influence.

APPENDIX D: ABBREVIATIONS

AICPA	American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
C.F.R.	Code of Federal Regulations
CFR	Consolidated Financial Report of the U.S. Government
CRE	Component Reporting Entity
CRS	Congressional Research Service
ED	Exposure Draft
FAR	Federal Acquisition Regulation
FASAB	Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board
FASB	Financial Accounting Standards Board
FDIC	Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation
FFRDC	Federally Funded Research and Development Center
FRS	Federal Reserve System
GAAP	Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
GAO	Government Accountability Office
GPFFR	General Purpose Federal Financial Report
OAI	Other Accompanying Information
OIG	Office of Inspector General
OMB	Office of Management and Budget
RSI	Required Supplementary Information
SFFAC	Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts
SFFAS	Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards
U.S.	United States
U.S.C.	United States Code

APPENDIX E: TASK FORCE MEMBERS

Owen Barwell, Department of Energy

Lieutenant Colonel Richard Brady, United States Marine Corp, Department of Defense

Terry Bowie, (formerly of) National Aeronautics and Space Administration

James L. Chan, University of Illinois at Chicago

Naresh Chopra, Department of Labor

Wendy Calvin, Department of Transportation

Tom Daxon, Former Oklahoma State Auditor

Ann Davis, U.S. Department of Treasury

Lynda Downing, Government Accountability Office

Abe Dymond, (formerly of) Government Accountability Office

Joel Grover, (formerly of) U.S. Department of Treasury, Office of the Inspector General

Mark Hadley, Congressional Budget Office

Regina Kearney, Office of Management and Budget

Karen Kelbly, National Credit Union Administration

Dan Kovlak, (formerly of) KPMG

Andrew Lewis, KPMG

Rick Loyd, Department of Energy

Ned Maguire, (formerly of) Office of the Dir. of National Intelligence, OIG

Sam Papenfuss, Congressional Budget Office

Reginald Royster, Department of Housing and Urban Development

Fred Selby, (formerly of) U.S. Department of Treasury, Office of Financial Stability

Gary Solamon, (formerly of) Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis

Sandy Van Booven, National Reconnaissance Office

Denise Williams, U.S. Department of Treasury, Fiscal Service

Adrienne E. Young, (formerly of) National Science Foundation

APPENDIX F: GLOSSARY

Component Reporting Entity—“Component reporting entity” is used broadly to refer to a reporting entity within a larger reporting entity.⁶⁷ Examples of component reporting entities include organizations such as executive departments, independent agencies, government corporations, legislative agencies, and federal courts. Component reporting entities would also include sub-components (those components included in the GPFFR of a larger reporting entity) that may themselves prepare GPFFRs. One example is a bureau that is within a larger department that prepares its own standalone GPFFR.

Conservatorship—A conservatorship is the legal process in which a person or entity is appointed to establish control and oversight of a company to put it in a sound and solvent condition. In a conservatorship, the powers of the company’s directors, officers, and shareholders are transferred to the designated conservator.⁶⁸

Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit—Control with risk of loss or expectation of benefit is the power to impose will on and/or govern the financial and/or operating policies of another organization with the potential to be obligated to provide financial support or assume financial obligations or obtain financial resources or non-financial benefits.⁶⁹

Disclosures—Information in notes or narrative regarded as an integral part of the basic financial statement.

Federally Funded Research and Development Center—Federally Funded Research and Development Center (FFRDC) is a government-funded entity that has a long-term contractual relationship with one or more federal agencies.⁷⁰ FFRDCs can be privately owned or government-owned, and they serve to meet the long-term research and development needs of federal agencies that could not otherwise be met as effectively in-house or through existing contractors. 49 Fed. Reg. at 14,464; 48 C.F.R. § 35.017(a). FFRDCs are established either specifically in statute or under the statutory authority of agencies to enter into contracts, which can be inherent or specific authority, and are used to perform research and development and related tasks.

General Purpose Federal Financial Reports—General purpose federal financial reports (GPFFRs) is used throughout this Statement as a generic term to refer to the report that contains the reporting entity’s financial statements that are prepared pursuant to generally accepted accounting principles. In the federal government, the report for the U.S. government-wide reporting entity is known as the consolidated financial report of the U.S. Government

⁶⁷ The larger reporting entity could be the government-wide reporting entity or another component reporting entity.

⁶⁸ Federal Housing Finance Agency Fact Sheet, Questions and Answers on Conservatorship

⁶⁹ For example, a non-financial benefit would be one where the federal government benefits from a service being provided to it or on its behalf.

⁷⁰ The Office of Federal Procurement Policy (OFPP) and Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) policies for FFRDCs apply to executive agencies, which includes “an executive department, a military department, or any independent establishment within the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 101, 102, and 104(1), respectively, and any wholly owned Government corporation within the meaning of 31 U.S.C. § 9101.” 48 C.F.R. § 2.101; see also 5 U.S.C. § 403.

(CFR) and for component reporting entities it is usually included in the performance and accountability report, the agency financial report, or the annual management report.

Government Sponsored Enterprise—Government Sponsored Enterprise (GSE) is created by Congress with its particular attributes defined in its enabling legislation and charter. Despite this diversity, there are at least four readily observable characteristics of GSEs: (1) private sector ownership, (2) limited competition, (3) activities limited by congressional charter, and (4) chartered privileges that create an inferred federal guarantee of obligations.⁷¹

Receivership—Receivership is the legal procedure for winding down the affairs of an insolvent institution.⁷²

Related Parties—Organizations are considered to be related parties in the GPFFR if the existing relationship or one party to the existing relationship has the ability to exercise significant influence over the other party's policy decisions. Relationship, as used in this context, refers to material transactions or events involving both parties.

Reporting Entity—Reporting entities are organizations that issue a GPFFR because either there is a statutory or administrative requirement to prepare a GPFFR or they choose to prepare one. The term "reporting entity" may refer to either the government-wide reporting entity or a component reporting entity.

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 2 provides criteria for an entity to be a reporting entity.⁷³ The criteria focus on whether:

- a. An entity's management is responsible for controlling and deploying resources, producing outputs and outcomes, and executing the budget or a portion thereof (assuming that the entity is included in the budget), and is held accountable for the entity's performance.
- b. An entity's financial statements would provide a meaningful representation of operations and financial condition.
- c. An entity's financial information could be used by interested parties to help them make resource allocation and other decisions and hold the entity accountable.

⁷¹ Congressional Research Service Report for Congress *Government-Sponsored Enterprises (GSEs): An Institutional Overview*

⁷² *Managing the Crisis: The FDIC and RTC Experience*, Appendix B - List of Abbreviations and Glossary of Terms; available online at <http://www.fdic.gov/bank/historical/managing/>; last accessed October 11, 2012.

⁷³ SFFAC 2, paragraphs 29-37, provides a discussion on Identifying the Reporting Entity for General Purpose Financial Reporting.

FASAB Board Members

Tom L. Allen, Chair

R. Scott Bell

Robert F. Dacey

Michael H. Granof

Sam M. McCall

Mark Reger

D. Scott Showalter

Graylin E. Smith

Harold I. Steinberg

FASAB Staff

Wendy M. Payne, Executive Director

Project Staff

Melissa L. Loughan

Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

441 G Street NW, Suite 6814

Mail Stop 6H19

Washington, DC 20548

Telephone 202-512-7350

FAX 202-512-7366

www.fasab.gov



Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

Date: August 8, 2014

To: Members of the Board

From: Melissa L Loughan, Assistant Director

Subject: **Ballot for Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 47, *Reporting Entity***

The following is a ballot for SFFAS 47. Please enter your name in the space provided below and indicate your approval or disapproval. Please e-mail the ballot to me at loughanm@fasab.gov. Alternatively, you may fax the signed ballot to 202 512-7366 or provide it at the August Board meeting.

Ballots are due by **August 28th**. Members not responding by **September 4th** will be considered to have abstained. If you decide to write a dissent, please notify staff immediately and provide your dissent as soon as possible but no later than **August 14th**. Any dissents received will be circulated to other members as soon as possible so that they may consider the views of the dissenting member.

Board Member: _____

Date: _____

_____ I approve the subject SFFAS

_____ I do not approve the subject SFFAS

See page 4, paragraph 10 for the only (hi-lighted) changes since the pre-ballot. All other changes remain marked so Board members may view all changes to SFFAC 2.

Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2: Entity and Display

Table of Contents

Contents Page

Introduction	
Reasons for Defining Reporting Entities	
Structure of the Federal Government	
Identifying the Reporting Entities for General Purpose Financial Reporting	
Criteria for Including Components in a Reporting Entity	
Other Aspects Concerning the Completeness of the Entity	
Displaying Financial Information	
Distinguishing Basic Information, RSI, and OAI	
Recommended Content for the Recommended Displays	
Appendix 1-A: Balance Sheet	
Appendix 1-B: Statement of Net Costs	
Appendix 1-C: Statement of Changes in Net Position	
Appendix 1-D: Statement of Custodial Activities	
Appendix 1-E: Statement of Budgetary Resources	
Appendix 1-F: Statement of Program Performance Measures	
Appendix 1-G: Statement of Financing	
Appendix 2: List of Acronyms [See Appendix F: Consolidated List of Acronyms]	

Introduction

1 A basic postulate of accounting is that accounting information pertains to entities, i.e., circumscribed legal, administrative, fiduciary, or other organizational structures. Another basic postulate is that entities use financial reports to communicate financial and related information about the entity to persons concerned with the entity.

2. The purpose of this statement is to establish concepts regarding what would be encompassed by a Federal Government entity's financial report. The statement specifies the types of entities for which there should be financial reports (hereinafter called "reporting entities"), establishes an organizational perspective for considering the makeup of each type of reporting entity, identifies types of financial reports for communicating the information for each type of reporting entity, suggests the types of information each type of report would convey, and identifies the process and factors the Board may consider in determining whether information should be basic information, required supplementary information (RSI), or other accompanying information (OAI). The purpose of this statement of accounting concepts is to provide guidance as to what would be encompassed by a Federal Government entity's financial report. The statement specifies the types of entities for which there ought to be financial reports (hereinafter called reporting entities), establishes guidelines for defining the makeup of each type of reporting entity, identifies types of financial reports for communicating the information for each type of reporting entity, suggests the types of information each type of report would convey, and identifies the process and factors the Board may consider in determining whether information should be basic information, required supplementary information (RSI), or other accompanying information (OAI).—

~~A statement of financial accounting concepts is intended to guide the members of the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) as they deliberate accounting standards for the federal government. The concepts in this Statement are consistent with those established in SFFAC 1 which are not superseded or modified by this Statement. The concepts in this Statement also are generally consistent with current practice and do not imply radical change. However, they are expected to guide the Board's future deliberations. In addition, concepts statements constitute "other literature" and may only be relied upon by financial statement preparers and auditors to resolve specific accounting issues in the absence of GAAP literature. This Statement also would be useful to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), when it carries out its statutory responsibilities for specifying who should prepare financial statements and the form and content of those statements.[†]~~

~~This statement does not try to define which reporting entities must prepare and issue financial statements. That authority and responsibility resides with the Congress, OMB, and other oversight organizations and resource providers.—~~

[†]—OMB specifies the form and content of agency and governmentwide financial statements, pursuant to authority assigned in the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990, as amended (title 31, U.S. Code, section 3515(d) and section 331(e)(1)) through periodic issuance of OMB Bulletins. OMB intends to base the form and content on the concepts contained in this statement.—

~~5. The specification of reporting entities intends to be suitable for all organizations within the Executive branch of the Federal Government, including the Departments, independent agencies², commissions, and corporations. FASAB does not propose to recommend accounting concepts and standards for the Legislative and Judicial branches. However, the concepts recommended in this statement would be appropriate for those branches.~~

6. The concepts, as defined in this statement, are intended primarily for the general purpose financial reporting performed by Federal entities. This is the financial reporting that these entities would undertake to help meet the objectives defined in Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) No. 1, "Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting." These objectives are as follows:

- **Budgetary integrity.** Federal financial reporting should assist in fulfilling the government's duty to be publicly accountable for monies raised through taxes and other means and for their expenditure in accordance with the appropriations laws that establish the government's budget for a particular fiscal year and related laws and regulations.
- **Operating performance.** Federal financial reporting should assist report users in evaluating the service efforts, costs, and accomplishments of the reporting entity; the manner in which these efforts and accomplishments have been financed; and the management of the entity's assets and liabilities.
- **Stewardship.** Federal financial reporting should assist report users in assessing the impact on the country of the government's operations and investments for the period and how, as a result, the government's and the nation's financial conditions have changed and may change in the future.
- **Systems and control.** Federal financial reporting should assist report users in understanding whether financial management systems and internal accounting and administrative controls are adequate to ensure proper execution of transactions, safeguard assets, and support performance measurement.

6a. SFFAC 1 also discusses accountability and users' information needs as the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. Specifically, par. 71 states "It may be said that 'accountability' and its corollary, 'decision usefulness,' comprise the two fundamental values of governmental accounting and financial reporting. They provide the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. ... The assertion of accountability therefore leads to identifying, first, those to whom government is accountable and, second, the information needed to maintain and demonstrate that accountability." Based on the concepts established in SFFAC 1, it is clear that accountability is a fundamental goal of financial reporting to be considered in establishing the boundaries of general purpose federal financial reports.

~~7. The concepts are also intended, as FASAB's mission statement requires, to help in meeting the financial and budgetary information needs of executive agencies and Congressional oversight groups, and to strengthen the conceptual basis and consistency of Federal accounting data.~~

² - "Independent agencies" is a term used to distinguish agencies that are independent of a Cabinet department from the agencies that are part of the Cabinet departments. Independent agencies report directly to the President and are part of the U.S. Government.

8. The entity and display concepts presented in this statement do not preclude the specification of ad hoc or temporary reporting entities to meet special reporting needs of users of Federal agencies' financial information. Nor do they preclude a reporting entity from preparing special purpose financial reports to meet the specific needs of persons in the reporting entity or in response to requests from persons outside the entity for certain financial information; or from preparing a so-called "popular report," which provides a simplified, highly readable, easily understandable description of a reporting entity's finances. These statements would not necessarily purport to be presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

Reasons For Defining Reporting Entities

9. The most basic reason for having an explicit understanding of what the reporting entity entails is to ensure that the users of the entity's financial reports are provided with all the information that is relevant to the reporting entity, subject to cost and time constraints. Clearly defining the boundaries of the reporting entity provides the users with a clear understanding of what the reporting entity encompasses. It helps to establish what information is relevant to the financial statements and what information is not.

10. Other reasons for having an explicit understanding of what the reporting entity entails are to:

- ensure information at each reporting entity includes information to support accountability about all relevant organizations to support accountability by including all relevant organizations—those organizations that are in the budget, owned by the Federal Government, or controlled by the Federal Government with risk of loss or expectation of benefit;
- ~~ensure that for the aggregation of information at each reporting level, no entity is omitted, and to provide for consolidations and/or combinations of information from reporting units at the same level, as appropriate;~~
 - assist in making comparisons among comparable reporting entities by reducing the possibility of unintended or arbitrary exclusions or inclusions of entities;
 - assist in making comparisons among alternative ways to provide similar services or products;
 - be able to distribute costs properly and fully and to properly attribute the responsibility for assets and liabilities; and
 - facilitate evaluating performance, responsibility, and control, especially where one agency is the provider or recipient of services attributable to or financed by another agency.

Formatted: Highlight

Formatted: Highlight

Formatted: Highlight

Formatted: Highlight

Formatted: Highlight

Structure Of The Federal Government

11. The Federal Government is an extremely complex organization composed of many different components. For accounting and reporting purposes, it may be viewed from at least three perspectives. However, the nature of each type of component and the relationships among the components and perspectives are not always consistent.

Organization Perspective

12. The first type of perspective is the **organization** perspective. The Federal Government is composed of organizations that manage resources and are responsible for operations, i.e., delivering services. These include the major Departments and independent agencies, which are generally divided into suborganizations, i.e., smaller organizational units with a wide variety of titles, including bureaus, administrations, agencies, services, and corporations. Many of these are further divided into even smaller suborganizations. On the other hand, there are small agencies for which division

into smaller units is generally not considered appropriate.

Budget Perspective

13. From another perspective, the government is composed of accounts presented in the budget, hereinafter referred to as **budget accounts**. Budget accounts are composed of expenditure (appropriations or fund) accounts and receipt (including offsetting receipt) accounts. The size and scope of these accounts varies according to Congressional preference. They can vary from very small accounts, which are useful for constraining management, to very large accounts, which can be used to finance many activities.

14. Budget accounts are not the same as Treasury accounts. The latter are accounts established in the Treasury to, among other purposes, record the appropriations and other budgetary resources provided by statutes and the transactions affecting those accounts. For the most part, budget accounts are aggregations of Treasury accounts. Also, Treasury accounts include deposit accounts as well as budget accounts.

15. Nor are budget accounts the same as the uniform ledger accounts established by the U.S. Government Standard General Ledger (SGL). SGL accounts record specific homogeneous types of transactions and balances that aggregate to specific classifications on the financial statements. They have been established so that agencies can establish control over their financial transactions and balances, meet the basic financial reporting requirements, and integrate budgetary and financial accounting in the same general ledger.

16. A budget account may coincide with an organization or one or more of its suborganizations. Other times, several budget accounts need to be aggregated to constitute an organization or sub-organization.

17. Budget accounts are classified as federal funds or trust funds. Any account that is designated by the laws governing the federal budget as being a trust fund is so classified. Federal funds comprise the larger group and include all transactions not classified by law as trust funds. Three components make up federal funds: the general fund, special funds, and revolving funds. The definition of each of these categories can be found in the OMB circular A-11 and the GAO [Glossary of Terms Used in the Federal Budget Process](#).

18. Care must be taken in determining the nature of all trust funds and their relationship to the entity responsible for them. A few trust funds are truly fiduciary in nature. Most trust funds included in the budget are not of a fiduciary nature and are used in federal financing in a way that differs from the common understanding of trust funds outside the federal government. In many ways, these trust funds can be similar to revolving or special funds in that their spending is financed by ~~earmarked~~ collections dedicated collections.

19. In customary usage, the term "trust fund" refers to money belonging to one party held "in trust" by another party operating as a fiduciary. The money in a trust fund must be used in accordance with the trust's terms, which the trustee cannot unilaterally modify, and is maintained separately and not commingled with the trustee's own funds. This is not the case for most federal trust funds that are included in the budget--the fiduciary relationship usually does not exist. The beneficiaries do not own the funds and the terms in the law that created the trust fund can be unilaterally altered by Congress.

20. Special funds and trust funds, except trust revolving funds, are aggregates of budget accounts. They normally consist of one or more receipt accounts and one or more expenditure accounts.

Among the trust funds, social insurance programs (such as social security and unemployment compensation) have the largest amount of funds and federal employee programs (such as retirement and health benefits) the second largest. Together they make up about 90 percent of all trust fund receipts. Other trust funds include excise tax financed programs for highway construction, airports and airway operations, and other public works. Like other budget accounts, trust funds are usually the responsibility of a single organization, although sometimes they are the responsibility of more than one organization.

21. Budget accounts are also categorized, as mandated by law and defined by OMB, into functions and subfunctions that represent national needs of continuing national importance and substantial expenditures of resources. Examples of functions are national defense and health.

Program Perspective

22. From a third perspective, the government is composed of **programs and activities**, i.e., the services the organizations provide and the specific lines of work they perform. Each program and activity is responsible for producing certain outputs in order to achieve desired outcomes.

23. There is no firm definition for the term “program;” it varies in the eye of the beholder. For example, the Highway program could relate to the entire Federal highway program, the program to build interstate highways (in contrast to city streets, secondary roads, etc.), or a program to build a highway between two specific points. Moreover, in accordance with the sequester provisions of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended, the House and Senate Appropriations Subcommittees annually define, in the Committee Reports, the meaning of “Programs, Projects, and Activities” as they relate to each of the Appropriations Acts.

24. The term “program” is also often used interchangeably with the terms “function” and “subfunction” (see paragraph 21). Generally, however, the term “function” would be used only for the functions defined in the budget. Otherwise, the term “program” would be used.

Intertwining Of The Perspectives

25. The programs are administered by the organizations and financed by the budget accounts. In a few instances, there is a one-to-one relationship among the three perspectives. A single budget account finances a single program and organization. Thus, the program is carried out only by the single organization and the organization performs only one program.

26. However, most programs are financed by more than one budget account, some of which might not be under the control of the organizational unit administering the program. Some programs are even administered by more than one organization. Likewise, a single organization or budget account could be responsible for several programs. In some instances, a program could also be considered an organizational unit, e.g., the Center for Disease Control and Prevention.

27. Furthermore, some of the support necessary to perform a program is frequently provided by other organizations and/or financed by other budget accounts. Examples are the computer support for a program that is obtained from a central unit within the department, or retirement health costs for a program's current and former employees.

28. This complex situation is the result of the evolution of Federal organizations, programs, and budgetary structures over many years. As Federal missions and programs have expanded and changed, new departments have been created, new organizations have been added to existing departments, and new duties have been assigned to existing organizations on the basis of various considerations. Similarly, the budget structure has evolved in response to the needs of the Congress; its committees and subcommittees; and various initiatives by the President, program managers, and interest groups.

Identifying The Reporting Entities For General Purpose Financial Reporting

29. As stated, reporting entities are entities that issue general purpose financial statements to communicate financial and related information about the entity.³ For any entity to be a reporting entity, as defined by this Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts, it would need to meet all of the following criteria.

- There is a management responsible for controlling and deploying resources, producing outputs and outcomes, executing the budget or a portion thereof (assuming that the entity is included in the budget), and held accountable for the entity's performance.
- The entity's scope is such that its financial statements would provide a meaningful representation of operations and financial condition.
- There are likely to be users of the financial statements who are interested in and could use the information in the statements to help them make resource allocation and other decisions and hold the entity accountable for its deployment and use of resources.

30. Budget accounts, in and of themselves, do not meet the criteria in the preceding paragraph and, therefore, would not be considered a reporting entity for the purposes of issuing general purpose financial statements. Also, the size and scope of the budget accounts across all government agencies lack sufficient consistency for them to be universally considered as the reporting entity. Similarly, programs generally do not meet the criteria in paragraph 29 and, therefore, would not be a considered a reporting entity that prepares general purpose financial statements.

31. On the other hand, organizations, and particularly larger organizations, meet the criteria in paragraph 29. While the occasional overlap of programs and budget accounts among more than one organizational unit could complicate financial reporting, the association of data with the responsibility centers, revenue centers, profit centers, cost centers, etc. which managers typically use for organizing and operating permit the following:

- aggregating information for not only the organization (and suborganizations), but also for one or more of the programs performed by the organization, and one or more of the budget accounts for which the organization is responsible, and
- the subsequent arraying of the information not only by organization, but also by sub-organization, program, and/or budget accounts.

32. This approach to defining the appropriate reporting entities in the Federal Government supports establishment of accountability in the organizations (and suborganizations) while still enabling them to provide information pertaining to their programs.

33. Although a reporting entity might not control all the budget accounts used to finance one or more of the programs it administers, any revenues attributable to or costs incurred on behalf of the programs it administers should be associated with that reporting entity. This notion holds true regardless of whether the reporting entity maintains personnel on a payroll.

³ [The Office of Management and Budget specifies the form and content of agency financial statements, pursuant to its authority under the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990, as amended \(title 31, U.S. Code, section 3515\(d\)\) through issuance of Bulletins and Circulars. OMB intends to base form and content on the concepts contained in this Statement. Any uncertainty as to what to consider as a reporting entity would be resolved by OMB in consultation with the appropriate Congressional committees.](#)

34. The departments and major independent agencies are organizational units and therefore would be the primary reporting entities. However, in many instances, financial statements that present aggregations of information into suborganization entities, i.e., bureaus, administrations, or agencies, may be more useful than statements that present only aggregations into organizational entities. The former can provide a better understanding of the financial results and status of the many individual suborganizations and programs constituting a department or major independent agency. They can reveal instances where programs are carried out by several suborganizations within the department or major independent agency.

35. Similar to other budget accounts, trust funds, special funds, and revolving funds are usually administered by a single organization. For financial reporting purposes, the organization would be the reporting entity; the trust fund or revolving fund would be a component of the organization that administers the fund in the same manner that a suborganization or other type of budget account is a component of the organization. This would not preclude separate reporting for the trust fund, special fund, or revolving fund by the managing organization, nor would it preclude disclosure of trust fund, special fund, or revolving fund information within the organization's report when there is sufficient interest.⁴

36. Likewise, some programs are coterminous, i.e., share the same boundaries, with an organization or sub-organization, while other programs—such as student loan programs—are the component for which resources are deployed, are responsible for achieving objectives, and/or are of great interest to outsiders. In both instances, the financial operations and results of the program might warrant highlighting or even separate reporting by the organization or suborganization which manages the program.

37. Financial statements for organizationally-based reporting entities may be audited and issued to external parties, unaudited and used for internal management purposes, or, perhaps to be more relevant and meaningful, combined with financial statements from other organizationally-based reporting entities.

38. The ultimate aggregation of organizations is into the Federal Government which, in reality, is the only independent economic entity. The Federal Government encompasses all of the resources and responsibilities existing within the component reporting entities. The aggregation includes organizations for which the Federal Government is accountable as well as other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the Federal Government are such that their exclusion would cause the Federal Government's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete.

38. The ultimate aggregation of entities is into the entire Federal Government which, in reality, is the

⁴ For some trust funds, the collection of the revenues is performed by an organizational entity acting in a custodial capacity that differs from the organizational entity that administers the trust fund. In those instances, the organizational entity that collects the revenues would be responsible for reporting only the collection and subsequent disposition of the funds. The organizational entity responsible for carrying out the program(s) financed by a trust fund will report all assets, liabilities, revenues, and expense of the fund, notwithstanding the fact that another entity has custodial responsibility for the assets. In the case of multiple responsible entities, if the separate portions of the program can be clearly identified with a responsible component entity, then each component entity should report its portion in accordance with the requirements of SFFAS 27, *Identifying and Reporting Funds from Dedicated Collections*. If separate portions cannot be identified, the component entity with program management responsibility should report the fund.

~~only independent economic entity—although some would say the entire country is the ultimate economic entity. The Federal Government entity would encompass all of the resources and responsibilities existing within the component entities, whether they are part of the Executive, Legislative, or Judicial branches (although, as noted in paragraph 5, FASAB's recommendations pertain only to the Executive Branch). The aggregation would include organizations for which the Federal Government is financially accountable as well as other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the government (see paragraphs 39 through 50) are such that their exclusion would cause the Federal Government's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete.—~~

~~Criteria For Including Components In A Reporting Entity—~~

~~39. Regardless of whether a reporting entity is the U.S. Federal Government, or an organization, suborganization, or program, there can be uncertainty as to what should be included and inconsistency as to what is included in the reporting entity. The identification and application of specified criteria can reduce this uncertainty and inconsistency.—~~

~~40. The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) has established criteria for what would be included in a state or local government reporting entity. These criteria relate to financial accountability, which includes appointment of a voting majority of the organization's governing board, together with imposition of will, and financial benefit to or burden on a primary government. These criteria, while in part relevant, must be tailored to the Federal Government environment. First, there are not as many different types of entities in the Federal Government as there are in state and local governments. Second, the Congress and others with oversight authority frequently establish explicit rules for what to include as part of a Federal reporting entity. Finally, as indicated, with the exception of the Federal Government as a whole, all the reporting units are components of a larger entity, namely the Federal Government, rather than independent economic entities.—~~

~~Conclusive Criterion—~~

~~41. There are two types of criteria that should be considered when deciding what to include as part of a financial reporting entity. The first is a **conclusive criterion**, i.e., an inherent conclusion that for financial reporting purposes, any organization meeting this criterion is part of a specified larger entity.—~~

~~42. Appearance in the Federal budget section currently entitled "Federal Programs by Agency and Account" is a conclusive criterion. Any organization, program, or budget account, including off-budget accounts and government corporations, included in that section should be considered part of the U.S. Federal Government, as well as part of the organization with which it appears. This does not mean, however, that an appropriation that finances a subsidy to a non-Federal entity would, by itself, require the recipient to be included in the financial statements of the organization or program that expends the appropriation.—~~

~~Indicative Criteria—~~

~~43. There are instances when, for political or other reasons, an organization (including a government corporation), program, or account is not listed in the “Federal Programs by Agency and Account,” yet the general purpose financial statements would be misleading or incomplete—in regard to the objectives for Federal financial reporting—if the organization, program, or account were not included therein. These organizations, programs, or accounts would normally be considered to be operating at the “margin” of what would be considered a governmental function in contrast to providing a more basic governmental function. Thus, in addition to the conclusive criterion, there are several **indicative criteria** that should be considered in the aggregate for defining a financial reporting entity in the Federal Government. No single indicative criterion is a conclusive criterion in the manner that appearance in the “Federal Programs by Agency and Account” section of the budget is. Nor can weights be assigned to the indicative criteria. Thus, while the indicative criteria are presented in descending order of importance, judgment must be based on a consideration of all of the indicative criteria—~~

~~44. The indicative criteria for determining whether an organization not listed in the “Federal Programs by Agency and Account” section of the budget is nevertheless part of a financial reporting entity are as follows:—~~

- ~~• It exercises any sovereign power of the government to carry out Federal functions. Evidence of sovereign powers are the power to collect compulsory payments, e.g., taxes, fines, or other compulsory assessments; use police powers; conduct negotiations involving the interests of the United States with other nations; or borrow funds for Government use.—~~
- ~~• It is owned by the Federal Government, particularly if the ownership is of the organization and not just the property. Ownership is also established by considering who is at risk if the organization fails, or identifying for whom the organization's employees work.—~~
- ~~• It is subject to the direct or continuing administrative control of the reporting entity, as revealed by such features as (1) the ability to select or remove the governing authority or the ability to designate management, particularly if there is to be a significant continuing relationship with the governing authority or management with respect to carrying out important public functions (in contrast to selections and designations in which there is little continuing communication with, or accountability to, the appointing official); (2) authority to review and modify or approve budget requests, budgetary adjustments, or amendments or rate or fee changes; (3) ability to veto, overrule, or modify governing body decisions or otherwise significantly influence normal operations; (4) authority to sign contracts as the contracting authority; (5) approval of hiring, reassignment, and removal of key personnel; (6) title to, ability to transfer title to, and/or exercise control over facilities and property; and (7) right to require audits that do more than just support the granting of contracts. (While many of these criteria exist in a client-contractor relationship, it is not necessarily intended that an entity's contractor be considered as part of the reporting entity.)—~~
- ~~• It carries out Federal missions and objectives.—~~
- ~~• It determines the outcome or disposition of matters affecting the recipients of services that the Federal Government provides.—~~
- ~~• It has a fiduciary relationship with a reporting entity, as indicated by such factors as the ability of a reporting entity to commit the other entity financially or control the collection and disbursement of funds; and other manifestations of financial interdependency, such as a reporting entity's responsibility for financing deficits, entitlement to surpluses (although not necessarily the assets acquired from failed units), or the guarantee of or “moral responsibility” for debt or other obligations.—~~

~~45. The entity or any of the above criteria are likely to remain in existence for a time, i.e., the interest in the entity and its governmental characteristics is more than fleeting.~~

~~46. In applying the indicative criteria, the materiality of the entities and their relationship with one another should be considered. Materiality should not be measured solely in dollars. Potential embarrassment to any of the entities' stakeholders should also be considered. Thus, a bias toward expansiveness and comprehensiveness would be justified, particularly if it could contribute to maintenance of fiscal control.⁵~~

~~Federal Reserve System~~

~~47. In establishing and monitoring monetary policy, the Federal Reserve System, i.e., the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and the Federal Reserve Banks, could be considered as functioning consistent with the indicative criteria presented in paragraph 44. However, in the United States, the organization and functions pertaining to monetary policy are traditionally separated from and independent of the other central government organizations and functions in order to achieve more effective monetary and fiscal policies and economic results. Therefore, the Federal Reserve System would not be considered part of the government wide reporting entity. Payments made to or collections received from the Federal Reserve System would be reported in the financial statements of the Federal Government. Certain other disclosures might also be appropriate in the financial statement for the entire government.~~

~~Government Sponsored Enterprises~~

~~48. There are also several Federally chartered but privately owned and operated financial institutions that have been established as financial intermediaries to facilitate the flow of investment funds to specific segments of the private sector. These entities are called government sponsored enterprises (GSE). Examples are the Federal National Mortgage Association, the Farm Credit Banks, and the Federal Home Loan Banks. By law, each of these GSEs is subject to oversight from a specific Federal agency. However, they are not included in the Federal budget section entitled "Federal Programs by Agency and Account." Nor, as currently constituted, do they function in a manner consistent with the indicative criteria presented in paragraph 44. Thus they would not be considered part of the government wide reporting entity nor the reporting entity to which they have been assigned for oversight.~~

~~49. On the other hand, there are "political expectations" associated with the GSEs, the most significant of which is an expectation that legislation would be enacted to support a GSE experiencing severe financial difficulties. (Political expectations are different than "moral obligations" established by many states. There is no statutory authority that defines whether and how a political expectation would be met. With a moral obligation, the manner in which it may be met is usually explicitly defined in statute.) Therefore, agencies assigned oversight responsibility for a GSE(s) would need to consider making disclosures of the government's relationship with the GSE(s) and other information that would provide an understanding of the possibility of a contingent liability.⁶~~

⁵ ~~Any uncertainty as to what to consider as a reporting entity would be resolved by OMB in consultation with the appropriate Congressional committees.~~

⁶ ~~The term government sponsored enterprise is also sometimes used in a broader manner to encompass other entities established by the Federal Government to further a public policy and that are also not included in the budget section "Federal Programs by Agency and Account." Examples are the Financing Corporation, Resolution Funding Corporation, Amtrak, and even, on occasion, the American National Red Cross. These entities have varied characteristics and different types of relationships to the Federal Government, and therefore, in some cases, may be included with the above mentioned GSEs in sections or tables of Federal budget documents. These entities need to be judged individually with respect to the~~

~~Bailout Entities-~~

~~50. The Federal Government occasionally bails out, i.e., guarantees or pays debt, for a privately owned entity whose failure could have an adverse impact on the nation's economy, commerce, national security, etc. As a condition of the bail out, the Federal Government frequently obtains rights similar to the authorities associated with the indicative criteria presented in paragraph 44. The existence of these rights does not make the bailed out entity part of the Federal Government reporting entity or any of the other reporting entities that are part of the Federal Government. Disclosure of the relationship(s) with the bailed out entity(ies) and any actual or potential material costs or liabilities would be appropriate.~~

Other Aspects Concerning ~~The~~ Completeness Of The Component Reporting Entity

51. Identifying the organizations to include in the reporting entity is one aspect of ensuring that the users of a reporting entity's financial reports are provided with all the information relevant to the reporting entity. However, because the only independent economic entity is the entire Federal Government, financial resources or free services are often provided from one component in the government to another component without a quid pro quo. For example, a portion of the retirement costs of Federal employees is reported by the Office of Personnel Management rather than the organizational entities employing the persons. Thus, within parameters more appropriately established in accounting standards, it is important to ensure that the reporting entity's financial reports include amounts that are attributable to the reporting entity's activities, even though they are recorded elsewhere. This is particularly important for costs associated with the use of human resources; personnel services are such a major part of most government activities. It is also important for the costs of services provided by other reporting entities, such as computer services provided by another unit.

~~51. The application of specified criteria to delineate the reporting entity is one aspect of ensuring that the users of a reporting entity's financial reports are provided with all the information relevant to the reporting entity. However, because the only independent economic entity is the entire Federal Government, financial resources or free services are often provided from one component in the government to another component without a quid pro quo. For example, a portion of the retirement costs of Federal employees is reported by the Office of Personnel Management rather than the organizational entities employing the persons. Thus, within the parameters explained in paragraphs 52 and 53, it is important to ensure that the reporting entity's financial reports include amounts that are attributable to the reporting entity's activities, even though they are recorded elsewhere. This is particularly important for costs associated with the use of human resources; personnel services are such a major part of most government activities. It is also important for the costs of services provided by other reporting entities, such as computer services provided by another unit.~~

~~52. A process in which the reporting entity is billed and pays for the amounts attributable to its activities is normally the most desirable approach for recording and reporting these amounts. However, when this type of direct debiting or crediting is not done, the decision as to whether to capture and report attributable amounts would be based on such criteria as the magnitude of the attributable amounts, the decision usefulness of the information to its likely users, the costs of capturing the data, whether a decision would be made differently as a result of having the information, and whether the information would have a policy impact.⁷~~

~~indicative criteria presented in paragraph 39 in order to determine whether they should be considered part of a Federal reporting entity.~~

~~⁷The Board is developing a Statement of Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts and Standards. This~~

~~53. It might be appropriate to consider the interest expense inherent in devoting a sum of capital to an organization or program as part of the total costs incurred in operating the organization or performing the program. This principle has already been adopted for the accounting for loans and loan-guarantees, whereby a loan program is charged for the cost of capital provided by the U.S. Treasury.⁸~~

Need to Distinguish between Consolidation Entities and Disclosure Entities

53A. The Federal Government is a large and complex organization. In order to fulfill public policy objectives, the Federal Government may use both consolidation entities (such as departments and agencies) and organizations that are distinct from consolidation entities to fulfill public policy objectives (such as financially independent organizations). These distinct organizations are referred to collectively as “disclosure entities.”

53B. Disclosure entities may maintain a separate legal identity, have a governance structure designed to insulate the organization from political influence, and/or be granted relative financial independence. Despite disclosure entities' relative operational and financial independence, accountability for all organizations owned or controlled by the Federal Government rests with the Congress and/or the President. So, both consolidation entities and disclosure entities should be included in financial reports to provide accountability.

53C. It may be difficult to provide accountability, by meeting financial reporting objectives, through consolidated financial statements because they blur the distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities. Consolidated financial statements may obscure the fact that resources and resource allocation decisions for disclosure entities are more independent than similar decisions for consolidation entities. While consolidation entities are financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue and governed by elected officials, disclosure entities often do not rely on taxes and other non-exchange revenue for financing or elected officials for spending authority. For example, a single-column presentation of information for all organizations likely would create a risk of incorrect inferences. Such inferences may include the amount of assets and revenues available for consolidation entities to use in general government activities, and the extent to which taxpayers stand ready to liquidate liabilities and meet expenses of disclosure entities.

53D. Maintaining a distinction between consolidation entities and disclosure entities may more effectively meet federal financial reporting objectives. Such a distinction may be maintained through discrete presentation of information regarding disclosure entities. Nonetheless, disclosures are not a substitute for consolidation entities recognizing the financial effects of transactions with disclosure entities.

~~document, when finalized, will address recognition of these amounts.~~

⁸ ~~“The Board has decided to undertake a project addressing the types of capital for which it might be appropriate for a reporting entity to disclose the costs, the reasons thereof, and the manner in which to determine and report these costs. A determination of the appropriateness of considering interest expense as part of the costs incurred by an organization or program will be made by that project.”~~

53E. Consolidated financial statements for only consolidation entities will facilitate an assessment of the financial position of the federal government and the cost of operations financed by taxes and other non-exchange revenue. Consolidation aggregates the individual financial statements of organizations that constitute a reporting entity and results in presentation of information for a single economic entity representing consolidated activities supported by taxes and other non-exchange revenue, resources, and obligations. Consolidation entities are considered federal entities and should apply GAAP as defined in SFFAS 34, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, Including the Application of Standards Issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board*. The following sections discuss display of information in consolidation entity financial reports.

Displaying Financial Information

54. Financial information is typically provided by or for a reporting entity through financial statements. Financial statements represent the principal means of communicating accounting information about an entity's resources, obligations, revenues, costs, etc. to those outside the entity. However, financial statements, and particularly those prepared for governmental and other not-for-profit organizations, may also contain information from sources other than accounting records. Also, management may communicate information to those outside the entity by means of financial reporting other than financial statements, either because the information is required to be disclosed by statute, regulation, or custom; or because management believes the information would be useful to those outside the entity and discloses it voluntarily.

55A. To enhance confidence in the reliability of information presented in financial statements, the statements are often, but not always audited by Inspectors General, independent accounting firms, or the Government Accountability Office. In developing accounting standards, the Board considers whether information should be categorized as basic information, required supplementary information (RSI), or other accompanying information (OAI). Distinguishing these categories is important because each category is subject to different procedures and reporting requirements under generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). When an auditor is engaged to audit an entity's financial statements, basic information as a whole is subject to testing for fair presentation in conformity with GAAP. However, RSI and OAI are unaudited, but subject to certain procedures specified by GAGAS for RSI and OAI, respectively. To assist users in analyzing the different types of information within financial reports, these differences must be conveyed and can be accomplished in a variety of ways. The traditional approach is to separate the categories of information. However, the categories may be commingled if the RSI and OAI are clearly labeled as "unaudited" or distinguished in a manner that informs the reader of the level of assurance provided.

55B. Classification of the information as basic information, RSI, or OAI does not constrain the form of presentation. For example, financial statements may be presented as basic financial statements, RSI, or OAI. Information can be required or encouraged to be in the form of financial statements, narrative, graphs, or tables. To clearly communicate the intended status, the Board must specify whether the information is to be considered basic information, RSI, or OAI. Selecting a category may involve a process which is described in paragraphs 73A to 73G.

56. In the Federal Government, there are several types of reporting entities (organizations, suborganizations, programs, and the government as a whole) and several financial reporting objectives (budgetary integrity, operating performance, stewardship, and systems and control). Each

of the reporting objectives can be met to a certain degree by the statements prepared by or for one type of reporting entity and to a greater or lesser degree by the statements prepared by or for the other types of reporting entities. For example, the objective of budgetary integrity can be best met with the program and financing schedules prepared for individual budget accounts. The objective of operating performance can be best met with financial statements from organizations/suborganizations and programs (although financial statements at this level can also help readers evaluate the reporting entity's budgetary integrity). The objective of stewardship can be best met with a financial statement for the entire government. Meeting the financial reporting objectives in their totality requires financial statements from all of the types of reporting entities.

Stock Statements

57. The financial reporting objectives are also met with different types of financial statements. A financial statement that presents financial information for an entity as of a particular point in time, however the information is measured, i.e., budgetary, cash, or accrual, is often characterized as a stock statement. An example of a stock statement is a **balance sheet**. It presents the total balances of assets, liabilities, and net position of an organization as of a specific time.

Flow Statements

58. Another type of financial statement provides information on an entity's flows of revenues, receipts, expenditures, expenses, gains, losses, and/or other changes of the entity's net resources during a period, however they are measured, i.e., budgetary, cash, or accrual. This type of financial statement is frequently characterized as a flow statement. The traditional flow statement is a statement of operations and changes in net position issued by private sector, profit seeking organizations. It presents the results of an entity's operations for a reporting period, including the changes in the entity's net position from the end of the prior reporting period. This type of statement is particularly useful for private sector, profit seeking organizations since their objective is to generate earnings and returns on investment. The statement of operations and changes in net position presents the revenues the entity receives, the expenses incurred to generate the revenues, the amount left for the entity's owners, and the resulting effect on the owners' equity.

59. The Federal Government and most of the other reporting entities in the Federal Government are spending entities whose objective is to provide services, some of which are financed by revenues received from the recipients of the service, and some of which, if not all or most of which, are financed by taxes and other unearned revenues.⁹ Thus, the most useful information a flow statement could present is the total and net costs of the services, i.e., how much of the services provided by the entity was financed by the taxpayers. This type of statement, which would be a **statement of net costs**, would support the achievement of Federal financial reporting objective 2A. Objective 2A states that "Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine the costs of providing specific programs and activities and the composition of, and changes, in these costs."

60. As indicated, revenues provided in exchange for the services, i.e., earned revenues, are not the only manner in which a Federal Government entity finances the services it provides. Other sources of financing are the appropriations received from the Congress, and such various non-exchange revenues as fines, donations, and transfers from other agencies. Therefore, another useful flow statement would be a **statement of changes in net position** that presents the manner in which the entity's net costs were financed and the resulting effect on the entity's net position. This also would be consistent with Federal financial reporting objective 2: "Federal financial reporting should assist

⁹ The Board is currently developing an Exposure Draft entitled "Revenue and Other Financing Sources" which addresses more fully the types of revenues (i.e., exchange versus non-exchange and earned versus unearned revenues) discussed here.

report users in evaluating. . .the manner in which these efforts and accomplishments have been financed....”

61. The collection of the major sources of funds for the appropriations, e.g., taxes, royalty payments, and fines, is the responsibility of just a few reporting entities, especially the Internal Revenue Service, the Customs Service, and the Minerals Management Service. These entities are functioning in a custodial capacity and are required to turn the taxes or other monies they collect over to the Treasury or other organizations. The results of these entities’ custodial activities could be reported in a flow statement that provides an understanding of from whom the taxes or other monies were collected and to whom they were distributed. This would be called a **statement of custodial activities**.

62. For many reporting entities, and particularly those engaged in reimbursable activities, it is useful to have an understanding of the sources and amounts of cash provided to the entity for operating, investing, and financing purposes and the major purposes for which the cash was used. This type of information can be displayed with a statement of cash flows, in accompanying footnotes, or as supplemental financial and management information.

Budget Statement

63. Meeting the first objective of SFFAC No. 1, “Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting,” namely the budgetary integrity objective, necessitates that the reader receive assurance that

- the amounts obligated or spent did not exceed the available budget authority, obligations and outlays were for the purposes intended in the appropriations and
- authorizing legislation, • other legal requirements pertaining to the account have been met, and
- the amounts are properly classified and accurately reported.

64. This information is provided in other reports, but there needs to be auditor involvement to provide assurance as to the reliability of the information. The assurance as to reliability of the information could be accomplished by including a **statement of budgetary resources** in the reporting entity’s financial statements, recognizing that the statement will likely be subject to audit. The presentation of data could be for the reporting entity as a whole, for the major suborganization units (assuming there is congruity among the major suborganization units and the budget accounts), or for the aggregations of the major budget accounts, rather than for the individual budget accounts of the entity or other types of entities. Violations of budgetary integrity at the account level occurring during the current year could be disclosed on an exception basis. (Many violations of budgetary integrity would also be violations of the Anti-Deficiency Act. Disclosure in the financial statements notwithstanding, these violations would also have to be reported as required by the Act.)

Reconciliation Statement--Budgetary And Financial Accounting

64A. Subobjective 1C of the budgetary integrity objective states that information is needed to help the reader to determine “how information on the use of budgetary resources relates to information on the costs of program operations and whether information on the status of budgetary resources is consistent with other accounting information on assets and liabilities.” This objective arises because accrual-based expense measures used in financial statements differ from the obligation-based measures used in the budgetary reports.

64B. To satisfy this objective, information is needed about the differences between budgetary and financial (i.e., proprietary) accounting that arise as a result of the different measures. This could be accomplished through a **Statement of Financing** that reconciles the budgetary resources obligated for a federal entity’s programs and operations to the net cost of operating that entity. The data presented could be for the reporting entity as a whole, for the major suborganization units, for major

budget accounts, or for aggregations of budget accounts, rather than for each individual budget account of the entity.

Performance Measures Statement

65. The second objective of Federal financial reporting states, in part, that Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps readers of the financial reports determine the efforts and accomplishments associated with Federal programs and the changes over time and in relation to costs. This suggests that a **statement of program performance measures**,¹⁰ i.e., one or more statements presenting service efforts and accomplishments measures for each of a reporting entity's significant programs, is necessary.

66. The Federal Government is increasing its interest in measuring and reporting program performance, as evidenced by the enactment of the Government Performance and Results Act and increasing emphasis during budget reviews on program performance. Moreover, the ability to seek and obtain maximum return from increasingly limited resources can be enhanced by an understanding of the results of the programs for which budget resources have been expended. In the final analysis, the objective of the Federal Government is to provide services, in contrast to the objective of private sector organizations, which is to earn profits and enhance the return on investment, both of which are monetary objectives. All of these factors suggest that the statement of program performance measures is not only an appropriate statement, but likely to be the most important statement for those persons interested in how a Federal entity is using its resources.

67. For a statement of program performance measures prepared by an organization-level reporting entity, the outputs and outcomes would be related to the performance of the entity itself and its own programs, e.g., clients vaccinated, illnesses prevented. For the government-wide report, broader measures of outcomes and impacts that depended on the joint efforts of several reporting entities would be appropriate, e.g., state of the economy, national security, environment, personal health, social welfare, although some narrower outcome measures might also be included.

¹⁰ "The Board does not consider the Statement of Program Performance Measures to be a basic financial statement.

Other Information

68. Financial information is also conveyed with **accompanying footnotes**, which are an integral part of the financial statements. Footnotes typically provide additional disclosures that are necessary to make the financial statements more informative and not misleading.

69. It is also necessary to convey more general information about the reporting entity. This could entail such matters as a brief description of the reporting entity; its missions, goals, and objectives; the programs it provides and the major recipients for the program; its major sources of funding; the manner in which the reporting entity is organized; its personnel resources; highlights of the entity's accomplishments during the reporting period; selected measures of program performance abstracted from the statement of program performance; problems encountered or targets missed and the reasons why; financial highlights and trends; expected problems and challenges; future targets the entity is setting for itself; and any other information the agency head or CFO considers necessary to fully and fairly provide an understanding of the entity's financial affairs. This type of information is typically presented in what has come to be known as a **management's discussion and analysis** or **overview** of the reporting entity.

70. The third objective of Federal financial reporting is that it "should assist report users in assessing the impact on the country of the government's operations and investments for the period and how, as a result, the government's and the nation's financial conditions have changed and may change in the future."¹¹ This objective requires a reporting of information concerning investments in education, training, research, and development and certain types of property, plant, and equipment that can affect the nation's future wealth, and to the claims on future budgetary resources resulting from prior decisions and actions.

71. The information pertaining to the aforementioned investments, certain types of property, plant, and equipment,¹² and claims on future budgetary resources is maintained in part in the entities' general ledgers and, in part, external to the general ledgers. Some of the information is recorded in units other than dollars, e.g., acres, millions of square feet. Finally, some of the information is not subject to the types of controls present in a system of double entry recordkeeping. Accordingly, a more suitable way to fulfill the third reporting objective would be to display the appropriate information as **required supplemental information** rather than attempting to include it in financial statements.¹³

72. [Rescinded per SFFAC 6.]

73. The fourth objective, systems and controls, is fulfilled, in part, by the act of preparing the financial statements. Other ways the fourth objective could be fulfilled through the audited financial reporting process is by a management assertion that would accompany the financial statements and/or an auditor's attestation on the financial statements. The management assertion would be an acknowledgment of its responsibility for the accuracy of the information in the financial statements, the completeness and fairness of the presentation of the information, the accuracy of the information in all material respects, and the reporting of the information in a manner designed to fairly present financial position and results of operations. The assertion could also include a statement regarding the adequacy of the entity's systems and controls, accompanied by the auditor's concurrence with

¹¹ A complete discussion of the third objective for Federal financial reporting, which is called the "stewardship objective," is contained in paragraphs 134 to 145 of Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, "Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting."

¹²[Text rescinded per SFFAC 6.]

¹³ [Text rescinded per SFFAC 6.]

the assertion.

Distinguishing Basic Information, RSI, and OAI

Determining Required Information

73A. Selecting a category for communicating information may involve a process that begins with determining what information should be required. Required information is information that consists of basic information and RSI. An item of information is a candidate for required information if it is consistent with the objectives of federal financial reporting and meets certain qualitative characteristics and cost-benefit considerations. The Board developed these factors earlier in the conceptual framework. SFFAC 1 identifies the reporting objectives (paragraphs 112 to 150) and the qualitative characteristics (paragraphs 157 to 164). It also discusses cost versus benefit considerations (paragraphs 151 to 155).

Determining Basic Information versus RSI

73B. Information that meets the criteria for required information is a candidate for basic information or RSI. Basic information is information which is essential for the financial statements and notes to be presented in conformity with GAAP. The FASAB standards are the core¹⁴ of GAAP and auditors may be engaged to express an opinion as to whether basic financial statements and notes are presented in conformity with those criteria.

73C. RSI is information that a body that establishes GAAP requires to accompany basic information. It may be experimental in nature to permit the communication of information that is relevant and important to the reporting objectives while more experience is gained through resolution of accounting issues. Also, the information may be expressed in other than financial measures or may not be subject to reliable estimation. As issues are resolved, the information may be considered basic at some point in the future.

73D. The Board specifies what information should be presented as basic information and what information should be presented as RSI. Assessing whether required information is a candidate for basic information or RSI may involve the Board's consideration of a range of factors which are listed in Table 1: Factors to Consider in Distinguishing Basic Information from RSI on page 107. The factors are not listed in a particular order and some may convey similar ideas. In addition, different Board members may assign different weight to each factor. Thus, the factors provide a general framework for each Board member's judgment and are not considered to present a decision tree, hierarchy, or precise algorithm for classifying items.

73E. For example, members may consider the relevance of the information to fair presentation. If the information has a high relevance to fair presentation, it may be a candidate for basic information communicated by financial statements and notes to the financial statements. The financial statements and notes could not be considered fairly presented if the information is missing or materially misstated. The rationales for some of the other factors that members may consider are:

a. Use of various types of financial data or financial transaction data. Members may deliberate the nature of the data used or the type of system used to process the information. Financial data used

¹⁴ The first and highest level of the GAAP hierarchy comprises standards and interpretations. Lower level GAAP may not conflict with standards or interpretations.

or data derived from a system for processing financial transactions, may be more likely to be considered basic information.

b. Level of importance the Board wishes to be communicated in the financial report or the auditor's report. In addition to the nature of the information, the Board may take into account the effect of categorizing an item as basic information or RSI in the financial report and what the auditor's report would communicate if the item is missing or materially misstated. By designating an item as basic information rather than RSI, the Board can have some bearing on the level of importance conveyed in the financial report and auditor's report. In other words, users may pay less attention to items categorized as "supplementary" in the financial report. Conversely, they may be more concerned with the auditor's conclusions regarding the fair presentation of the financial statements. Hence, the more important the item, the more likely it would be a part of the financial statements and notes prepared in conformity with GAAP, such that if the item is missing or materially misstated, the matter would be conveyed in the auditor's report on the fair presentation of the financial statements.

c. The extent to which the information interests a wide audience (rather than specialists). If an item of information is of great interest to users, the information may be a candidate for basic information. Conversely, if the item is primarily of interest to subject matter specialists, the information may accompany the basic information as RSI.

d. Extent to which there are not alternative sources of reliable information. If organizations routinely publish an item of information that is scrutinized by independent advisors, it may be more likely to be considered RSI than basic information.

e. Agreement on criteria that permit comparable and consistent reporting. If there is a lack of specific criteria for measuring an item, preparers may have great discretion in developing their calculations and auditors may lack criteria necessary for the expression of an opinion. The item of information may be a candidate for RSI.

f. Experience among users, preparers, and auditors with the information. The Board may consider the views of expert users, preparers, and auditors in developing measurement criteria for basic information. If the level of experience regarding an item is low, input on specific criteria may not be available. Also, when there is not sufficient experience to develop measurement criteria, auditors may have concerns about expressing an opinion on the information. They may express qualifications or include explanations in their report. Categorizing the information as RSI may encourage reporting while more experience is gained and criteria developed.

g. Benefit/cost ratio of using resources to compile the information as well as ensure accuracy. The Board may consider the benefit and cost associated with producing and auditing the item of information.

OAI

73F. If an item of information does not meet the criteria for basic information or RSI, it becomes a candidate for OAI. OAI is information that accompanies basic information and RSI, but is not required by a body that establishes GAAP. Some entities may desire to report information to supplement required information and enhance a user's understanding of the entity's operations or financial condition. This may include, but is not limited to, information on delivery times, turnover, and wastage of inventories; expected replacement of physical capital; and delinquency, aging, and default rates for loan portfolios. In addition, entities report information not required by a body that establishes GAAP, but required by laws or administrative directives. The laws or administrative directives may require the information to be audited and may require it to accompany basic information and RSI. However, this information is also considered OAI.

FACTORS TO CONSIDER IN DISTINGUISHING BASIC INFORMATION FROM RSI		
Low (implies RSI)	Factor	High (implies Basic)
	<Relevance to fair presentation>	
	<Connection with elements of financial reporting>	
	<Use of various types of financial data or financial transaction data>	
	<Level of importance the Board wishes to be communicated in the financial report>	
	<Significance, relevance, or importance of the item in light of <i>Objectives</i> >	
	<Level of importance the Board wishes to be communicated in the auditor's report>	
	<Relevance to measuring financial condition or changes in financial condition>	
	<Extent to which the information interests a wide audience (rather than specialists)>	
	<Extent to which there are not alternative sources of reliable information>	
	<Agreement on criteria that permit comparable and consistent reporting>	
	<Experience among users, preparers, and auditors with the information>	
	<Benefit/cost ratio of using resources to compile the information as well as ensure accuracy>	
	<Connection with basic financial statements>	
	<Reliability and/or precision possible>	
	<Reliability and/or precision needed>	

73G. Although the FASAB does not require OAI to be presented, the FASAB may at times encourage voluntary reporting of items to help in the development of information that may enhance overall federal financial reporting. For example, the FASAB may consider an item to be relevant to entity operations but, for the moment, does not meet other criteria for required information.

Table 1: Factors to Consider in Distinguishing Basic Information from RSI*

*As noted in paragraph 73D, the factors are not listed in a particular order and do not represent a hierarchy of factors.

Financial Reporting For An Organizational Entity

74. Meeting the four objectives of Federal financial reporting in the most efficient manner suggests that reporting entities issue a financial report that would include the following:

- management's discussion and analysis;
- statement of financial position (commonly referred to as balance sheet);
- statement of net costs;
- statement of changes in net position;
- statement of custodial activities, when appropriate;
- statement of budgetary resources;
- ¹²⁻²¹⁵statement of financing;
- statement of program performance measures;¹⁶
- accompanying footnotes;
- required supplementary information; and
- other accompanying information.

¹⁵ ¹²⁻²¹⁵The Statement of Financing may be presented as a financial statement or as a schedule in the notes to the financial statements. The OMB will provide guidance regarding details of how the information will be displayed.

¹⁶ ¹²⁻²¹⁵The statement of program performance measures is not a basic financial statement. Nevertheless, it is an important component of the financial reports.

75. With some organizations, and even suborganizations, the activities of one or more programs or other components are as important to the readers of the financial statements as are the activities of the entity as a whole. This would be particularly true for a Department composed of many bureaus, administrations, agencies, services, etc., and particularly if their programs are dissimilar. In those instances, consideration should be given to the preferability of reporting the assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, etc. of both the significant components individually and of the entity in its entirety. Hence, larger organizations, and particularly those composed of many bureaus, administrations, agencies, etc., would prepare not only consolidated financial statements for the organizational entity, but also provide information pertaining to their individual significant components.¹⁷ The information for the individual components could be provided with separate columns in consolidating financial statements¹⁸ (with the information for the less significant components, and possibly the entity's management component, aggregated into a single separate column), in separate financial statements for each significant component, or in the accompanying footnotes. The significant components can be suborganizations or programs. If they are suborganizations, information regarding programs should be provided in some manner.

76. Furthermore, there are frequently instances when one or more of the suborganizations conduct a very visible or critical activity and there is a high level of public interest, e.g., tax

¹⁷ "Such components are similar to responsibility segments as referred to in SFFAS 4, *Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts and Standards*, par. 78-81. Responsibility segments are used to accumulate costs and outputs for major lines of activity.

¹⁸ "A **consolidated financial statement** presents the transactions and balances for a reporting entity's components in a single column. In arriving at the consolidated amounts, the transactions and balances among the entities are eliminated. A **consolidating financial statement** presents the information for the reporting entity's components as well as the consolidated amounts in individual columns. The elimination of the inter-entity transactions and balances needed to arrive at the consolidated amounts might or might not be presented in a separate column.

collection activity; maintains large and complex fund flow activity; has earmarked tax activity; or its financial viability is of special concern to the Executive Branch or the Congress, e.g., deposit insurance funds. In those situations, it may be desirable for the sub-organization to prepare and issue a separate financial statement that is consistent with the concepts presented in this concepts statement.¹⁶ In doing so, it would need to identify the parent entity and describe the sub-organization's relationship to the parent.

77. The components of any reporting entity are likely to conduct transactions with other components in the reporting entity, other Federal entities, and persons and organizations outside the Federal Government. Likewise, they are likely to have assets due from and liabilities due to other Federal components and entities and to non-Federal persons and organizations. In reporting the transactions and balances of a Federal reporting entity in its entirety, it is conceptually desirable, although not always practicable, to eliminate the intraentity transactions and balances.¹⁷

~~78. Some of a reporting entity's components are likely to be required by law or policy to prepare and issue financial statements in accordance with accounting standards other than FASAB's, e.g., accounting standards issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board or accounting standards established by a regulatory agency. Those components should continue to issue the required reports. The reporting entities of which the components are a part can issue consolidated, consolidating, or combining statements that include the components' financial information prepared in accordance with the other accounting standards. They need to be sensitive, however, to differences resulting from applying different accounting standards that could be material to the users of the reporting entity's financial statements. If these differences are material, the standards issued by FASAB should be applied. The components would need to provide any additional disclosures required by FASAB and included in the OMB-issued guidance that would not be required by the other standards.~~

Financial Reporting For The Entire Government

79. In addition to budgetary integrity, operating performance, and systems and control information, readers of the financial statements for the entire government are likely to be concerned primarily with whether the government has been a proper steward. This can best be achieved with the preparation and issuance of the following:

¹⁶ Sub-organizations required by statute to prepare and issue a separate financial statement would, by definition, also need to do so.

¹⁷ [Rescinded by SFFAC 6.]

- management's discussion and analysis;
- statement of financial position (commonly referred to as balance sheet);
- statement of net costs;
- statement of operations and changes in net position;
- reconciliation of net operating revenue (or cost) and unified budget surplus (or deficit);
- statement of changes in cash balance from unified budget and other activities;
- comparison of budgeted and actual use of resources;
- statement of program performance measures;
- accompanying footnotes;
- required supplementary information; and • other accompanying information.

80. The readers should be made aware of whether the financial statements for the entire government exclude any significant entities that are included in the budget or include significant entities that are not included in the budget.

81. [Rescinded by SFFAC 6.]

82. The financial statements for the entire government could also be used to provide information on Presidential initiatives or crosscutting programs that is not available in financial statements for individual organizations or programs.

83. Because the government is a complete and integral economic entity, in contrast to the departments and major agencies whose components frequently have nothing in common other than belonging to the same department, it would be appropriate that the financial statement for the entire government be a consolidated financial statement. However, it might also be appropriate to display selected information for the components, funds, etc., either within the consolidated financial statement, in accompanying footnotes, and/or as supplemental information.

*Recommended Contents For The Recommended Displays

***NOTE: This section was not included because the amendments in the proposed standard do not affect this portion of SFFAC 2.**